ŠKODA

ŠKODA Superb Owner's Manual

3T0012720AH

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are given in this manual.

Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

3T0012720AH

Table of Contents

General Maintenance

Do-it-yourself

Technical data

Index

Board literature

You always find these **Operating Instructions** and the **Service Plan** in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature can also contain **The radio instruction manual** or **Manual of the navigation system**and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Owner's Manual
These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The scope of equipment on your vehicle depends on your purchase contract for the vehicle. For questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner, if required.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this operating manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

Service schedule
The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover information with regard to warranty and service events.

The radio instruction manual
The instruction manual of the radio contains a description of the operation of the radio, and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Manual of the navigation system
The manual of the navigation system includes a description of the operation of the navigation system, and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Move Brochure
The Move brochure contains phone numbers of importers and service offices in individual countries, together with emergency numbers.

Notes

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols
An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings.
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page.
- Situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Trademark.
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display .
- Text display in the segment display.

WARNING
Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION
Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment
Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note
Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions

Structure of the manual
The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. Airbag System) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag Overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** - Module Overview within the chapter introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, valid for the entire chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Front Airbags)

Information Search
When searching for information in the operating instructions, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided nothing is otherwise stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AHL	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
APN	An access point name for the Wi-Fi connection
ASR	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	active driver steering recommendation
EDL	electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	Controller for the engine electronics
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ET	Rim depth
EU	European Union
FSI	Stratified petrol direct injection
GSM	a digital network of mobile devices for the transmission of voice and data
HFP	Connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number

Abbreviation	Definition
rSAP	Remote transmission of the SIM data
SSP	Connect two devices using Bluetooth ® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo-charging and direct injection
UMTS	the next generation of the GSM network (3G)
VIN	Vehicle identification number
WLAN	wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (wireless)

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
✓ Ensure that the function of the wiper and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
✓ Secure all items of luggage.
✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is affected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

✓ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiter for front and outer rear seats.
› Belt tensioner for front and outer rear seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Driver's knee airbag.

› Front side airbags.
› Rear side airbags.
› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height.
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 22, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

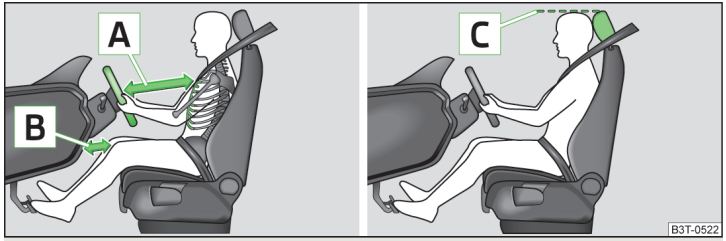


Fig. 1 **Correct driver seating position / properly adjusted headrest**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles with driver knee air bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 1.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 10, *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 1.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 81.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure your arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

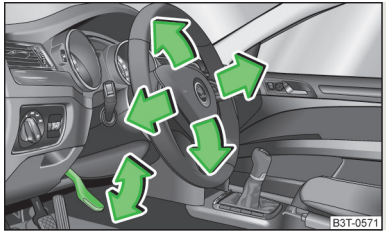


Fig. 2
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever underneath the steering wheel

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 2.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked while you are driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – there is the risk of an accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 81.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 81.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seats.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- ✓ Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- ✓ Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

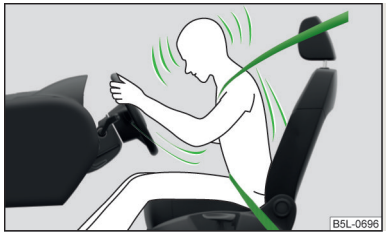


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 22.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 14, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 9.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt when closing the door.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or similar items, which prevent the lash lock function of the safety belt from operating. A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 87.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belts may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 183.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

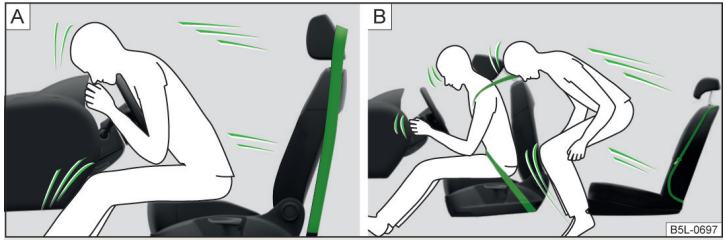


Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 - 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric tonne (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg “increases” to 4.8 tonnes (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life-threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated in the front » Fig. 4 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

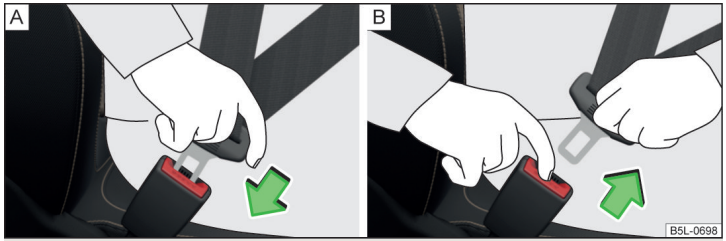


Fig. 5 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

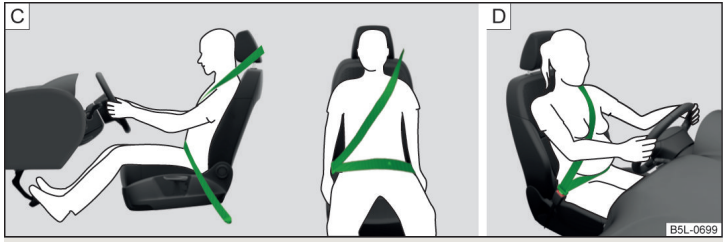


Fig. 6 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Fastening

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 9.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 5 – A until it you hear it click into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be lie across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

The lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis on expectant mothers to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

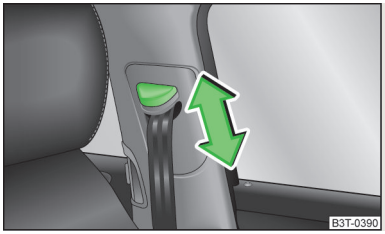


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts**, is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

i Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side collisions.

WARNING

▪ An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
▪ The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
▪ To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position.*
▪ If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system
▪ If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
▪ No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
▪ Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
▪ Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
▪ It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
▪ The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 40.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.
› Electronic control unit.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 17.
› Driver's knee airbag » page 18.
› Side airbags » page 19.
› Head airbags » page 20.
› Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 40.
› Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 21.
› Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 21.

Note

▪ The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
▪ If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
▪ When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high-speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The interior lighting illuminates (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position).
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags

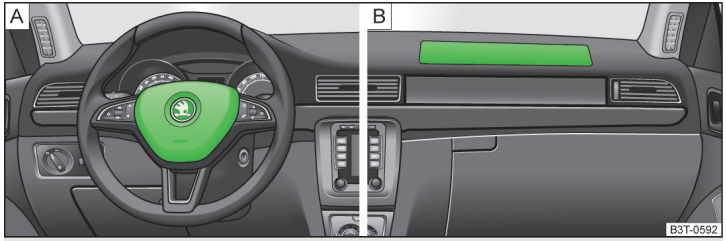


Fig. 8 **Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dashboard**

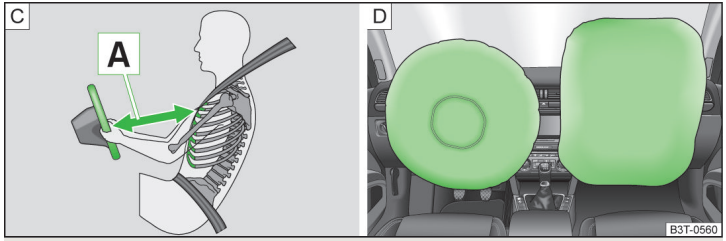


Fig. 9 **Safe distance to steering wheel/gas-filled airbags**

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 8 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - B.

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 9 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the lettering AIRBAG is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

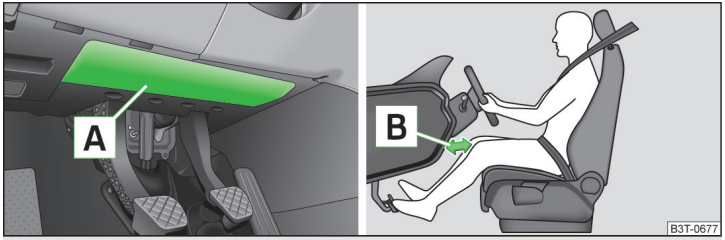


Fig. 10 **Installation of the airbag / Safe distance from the switching panel**

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs B and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with AIRBAG is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

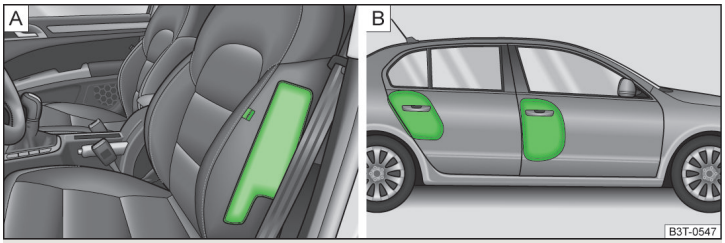


Fig. 11 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat or gas-filled side airbag**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest.

The head airbag and belt tensioner on the relevant side are also automatically deployed when the side airbags » Fig. 11 - B are deployed.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 22, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 175, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

▪ In vehicles with side airbags at the front a label with the lettering AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.
▪ In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word AIRBAG is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest.

Head airbags

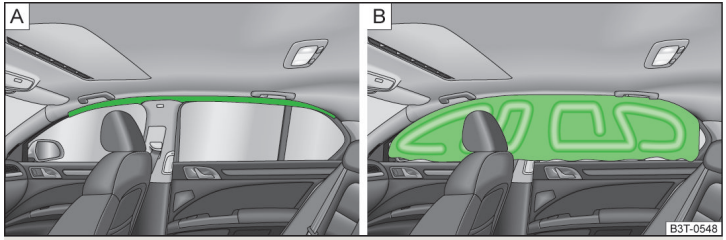


Fig. 12 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 12 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

The airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar when it is deployed » Fig. 12 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

WARNING

▪ There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
▪ Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
▪ The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the fitted accessories could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants.
▪ The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
▪ There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering AIRBAG can be seen on the B-column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 21, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light illuminates for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light illuminates for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition.
- The OFF 3 » Fig. 13 *on page 21* warning light illuminates when the ignition is switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

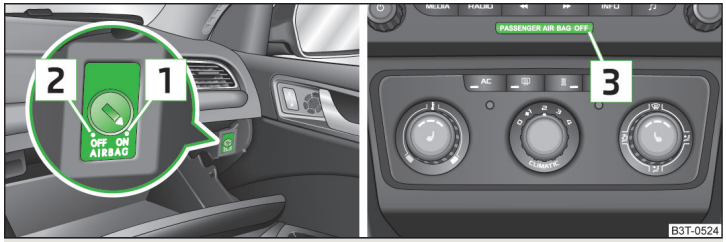


Fig. 13 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 13 **OFF**.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that warning light OFF 3 **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the text illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 13 **ON**.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that warning light OFF 3 **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning light OFF is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
  - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
  - The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a capital E in a circle and the certification number below

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 23, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat.*

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 83. After removing the child seat, reinstall the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan

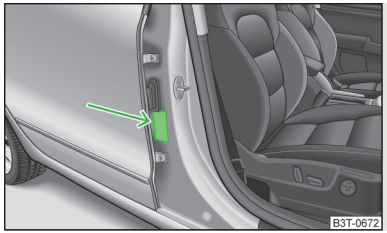


Fig. 14
Sticker on the B-column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 15 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.

› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

WARNING

▪ The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*.
▪ **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
▪ This fact is also indicated by the sticker that can be found in one of the following locations.
  ▪ On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 14. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  ▪ On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 15.
▪ With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
▪ As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated again.

Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 16 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 16.

Child safety and side airbag

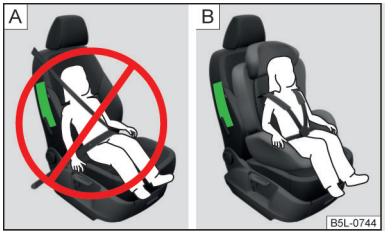


Fig. 17
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the area into which the side airbag will deploy » Fig. 17 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 17 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe and on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9 - 18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15 - 25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22 - 36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe and on page 22 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat Center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9 - 18 kg	U	U	U
2 15 - 25 kg	U	U	U
3 22 - 36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system

Fig. 18
ISOFIX system label

ISOFIX represents a system for a fast and secure child seat mounting.

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 18.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX-system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX-system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX-system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
0+ up to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
	D			
	C			
1 9 - 18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15 - 25 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22 - 36 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a ISOFIX-child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX-system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX-child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER-system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

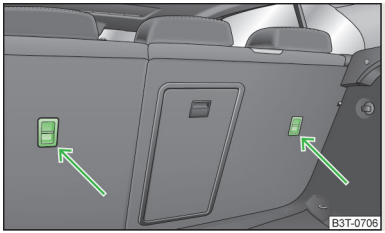


Fig. 19
Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system

TOP TETHER represents a fastening system, which restricts movements of the upper part of the child seat.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 19.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER**-system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

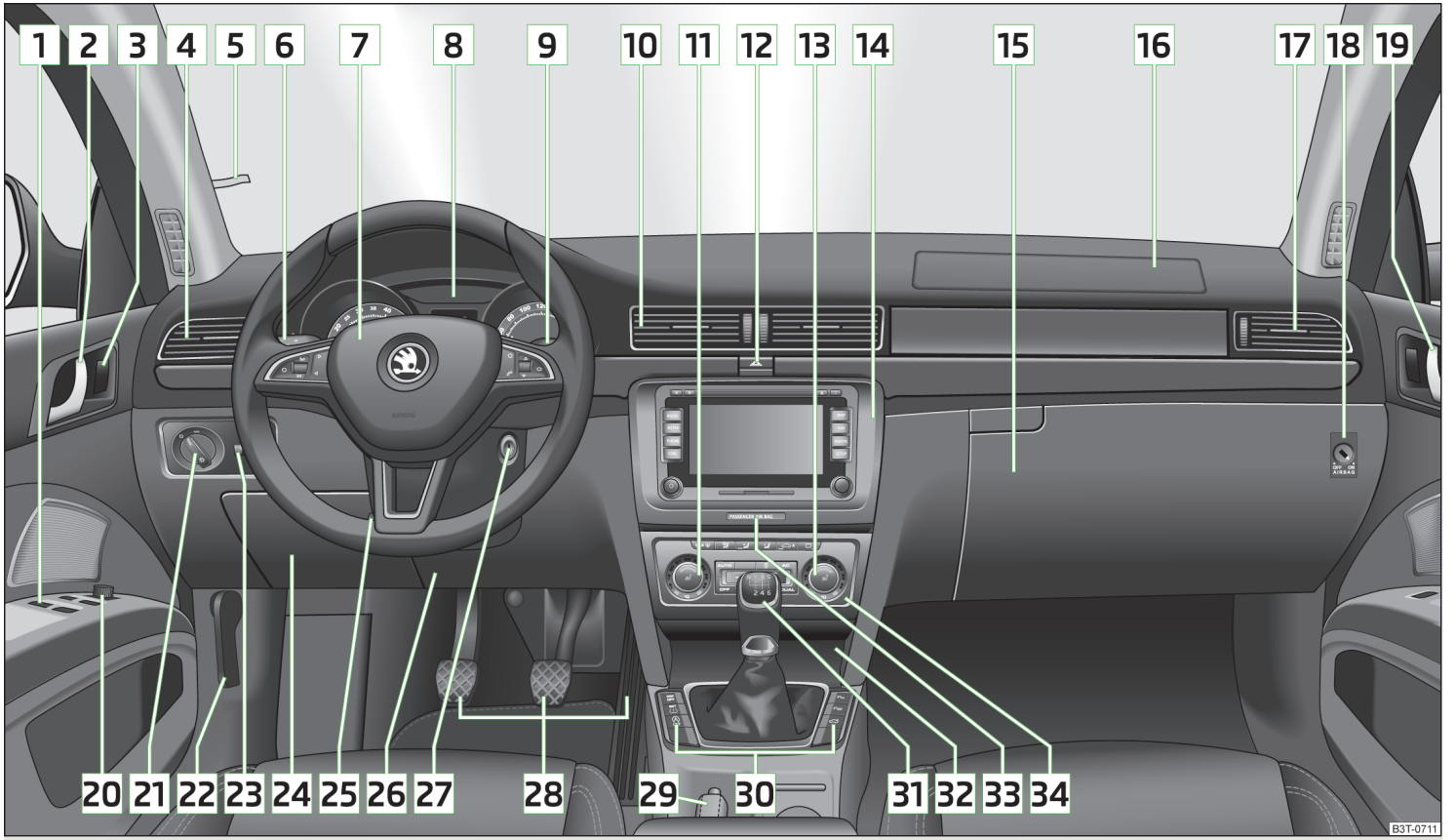
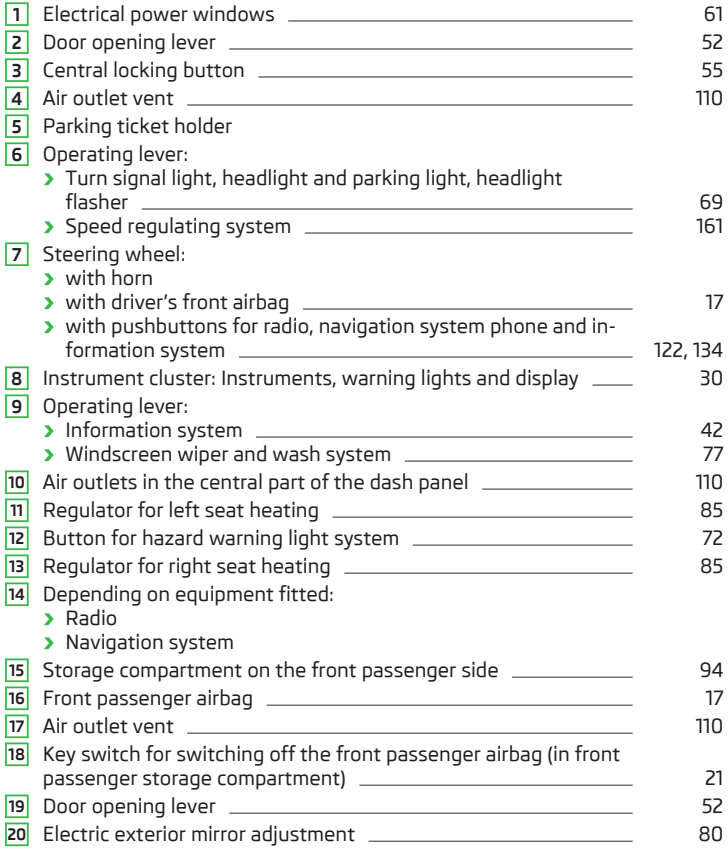


Fig. 20 **Cockpit**

Operation

Cockpit

Overview



1 Electrical power windows — 61
2 Door opening lever — 52
3 Central locking button — 55
4 Air outlet vent — 110
5 Parking ticket holder
6 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 69
› Speed regulating system — 161
7 Steering wheel:
› with horn
› with driver's front airbag — 17
› with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system phone and information system — 122, 134
8 Instrument cluster: Instruments, warning lights and display — 30
9 Operating lever:
› Information system — 42
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 77
10 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 110
11 Regulator for left seat heating — 85
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 72
13 Regulator for right seat heating — 85
14 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 94
16 Front passenger airbag — 17
17 Air outlet vent — 110
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 21
19 Door opening lever — 52
20 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 80
21 Light switch — 68
22 Bonnet release lever — 187
23 Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the headlight beam range adjustment — 68, 68
24 Storage compartment on the driver's side — 89
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 10
26 Driver's knee airbag — 18
27 Ignition lock — 139
28 Pedals — 145
29 Handbrake — 144
30 Bars with buttons depending on the equipment fitted:
› START STOP — 162
› Tyre pressure loss indicator — 165
› Traction control ASR — 155
› Electronic Stability Control ESC — 154
› Park Assist — 157
› Parking aid — 156
› Tailgate operation (Superb Combi) — 59
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 144
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 145
32 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Ashtrays — 91
› Stowage compartment — 90
33 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 21
34 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 112
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 115

Note

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 20. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fault display

The **Error** message will appear in the display if there is a fault in the instrument cluster. Ensure that the fault is rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving - risk of accident. Operate the controls only when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Overview

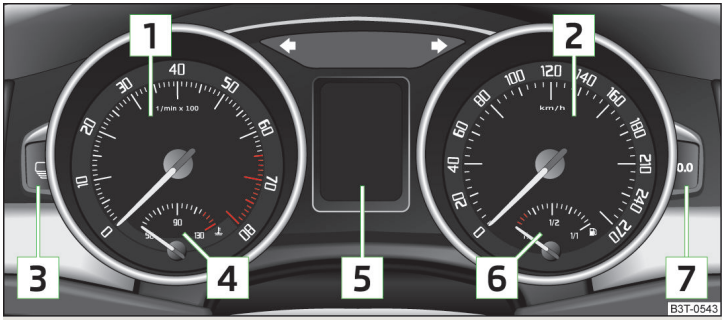


Fig. 21 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34

2 Speedometer » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34

3 Button for display mode:
› Time settings » page 32
› Enable/disable the display of the second speed[1] » page 33
› Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[1] » page 48

4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 31

5 Display » page 31

6 Fuel gauge » page 32

7 Button for:
› Reset trip meter » page 32
› Setting the time » page 32
› Enable/disable the mode selected by means of button 3

[1] Applies for vehicles with a segment display.

Revolution counter

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The red scale of the revolution counter 1 » Fig. 21 *on page 30* indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 43.

Speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Warning against speeding
An audible warning will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning is switched off once the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

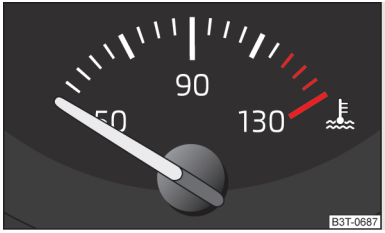


Fig. 22
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The coolant temperature gauge » Fig. 22 only operates when the ignitions is switched on.

Cold range
The pointer in the left of the scale indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or under heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
The coolant temperature is too high if the pointer reaches the red area of the scale. Further information » page 36.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Display

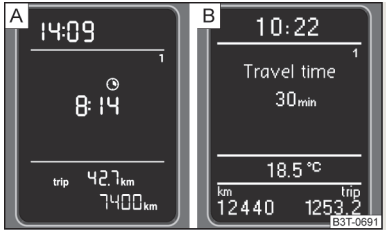


Fig. 23
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The following information will be displayed.
› Distance travelled » page 32
› Time » page 32
› Details of the information system » page 42
› Details of the service interval display » page 48

[1] This function is only valid for some countries.

Display types » Fig. 23.

A Segment display
B MAXI DOT display

CAUTION
Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Fuel gauge

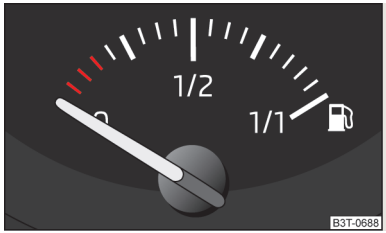


Fig. 24
Fuel gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 24 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 60 litres. If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol is illuminated » page 39.

CAUTION
Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note
After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

Counter for distance driven

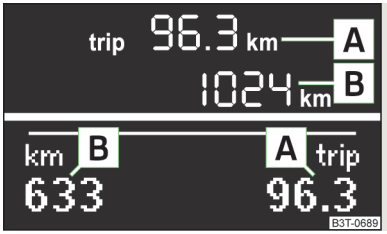


Fig. 25
Segment display / MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display » Fig. 25
A Trip odometer
B Odometer

Daily trip counter (trip)
The counter indicates the distance you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset trip meter
› Press and hold button 7 » Fig. 21 *on page 30*.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Note
If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Use buttons 3 and 7 to set the time » Fig. 21 *on page 30*.
3 The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).
7 The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 47.

Display of the second speed

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different units for speed.

MAXI DOT display
The display of the second speed can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 47, *Settings*.

Segment display
› Press the 3 » Fig. 21 *on page 30*key repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 32.
› Press the 7 key while the display is flashing.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

Display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Display in rear centre console

Fig. 26
Centre console at rear: Display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The time and the outside temperature are displayed on the display in the rear centre console when the ignition is switched on » Fig. 26.

The values are taken over by the instrument cluster.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 34, *Warning lights*.

The **Vehicle status** menu item is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message is present. The first of the fault messages is displayed after this menu item is selected. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 36
	Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot	» page 33
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 37
	Thickness of brake pads	» page 41
	Problem with engine oil pressure	» page 33

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot
If the symbol appears in the MAXI DOT display, this indicates that the temperature of the automatic DSG gearbox clutches is too high.

[1] On models on which the speedometer indicates mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!

do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the icon goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the icon disappears.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 72. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 42 .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 72. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 186, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 193 » !.

WARNING

- If the warning light together with the warning light » page 38, *Anti lock brake system (ABS)* illuminates, **do not continue to drive!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of accident.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 186, *Engine compartment*.

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **is illuminated** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten their seat belts.

The warning light **goes out**, after the respective seat belt has been fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 20 km/h, the warning light **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic warning signal.

The warning signal is switched off and the warning light **remains permanently illuminated** if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. The electrical system requires checking.

CAUTION

Do not continue driving if the warning light (coolant system fault) illuminates in addition to the warning light while you are driving. Stop the engine - there is a risk of engine damage. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if one or several doors are opened.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

When the warning light is **flashing**, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Engine off. Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 190.

If the warning light **flashes do not drive any further**, even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates** or **flashes**, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check coolant! Owner's manual!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the coolant level » page 192.
› If the coolant level is too low, top up coolant » page 192.

If the warning light **does not illuminate**, after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light is still **illuminated**, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 222, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light is nevertheless still **illuminated**, **do not continue your journey!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off - a danger of injury is present!

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Bonnet

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the bonnet is unlocked.

Boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the boot lid is opened.

Power steering / steering lock (system KESSY)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

Power steering

If the warning light **is illuminated**, this indicates a **partial failure** of the Power Steering and the steering forces can be greater.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

› Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

The powered steering is fully functional again if the or warning light **does not illuminate** after you switch the engine back on.

If the warning light or **illuminates** again, then immediately obtain help from an authorised dealer.

Steering lock (KESSY system)
A long as the warning light **flashes**, the steering lock cannot be released.

If the warning light **flashes**, a signal tone sounds, and the following message appears in the MAXI DOT- display **Steering column lock. Workshop!** appears the electrical steering lock is faulty. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **flashes** , a beep will sound and a message **Steering lock: defective** appears in theMAXI DOT display, this indicates that the electric steering lock is broken. Park the vehicle, **do not continue your journey!**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine oil level

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light illuminates (oil quantity too low)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 190.

The warning light will **go out** if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will **come on** again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light **flashes** several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Read and observe on page 35 first.

If the warning light **flashes**, the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Fault: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ASR might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does **not illuminate any more** after the engine is switched on again, then the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » page 155.

Note
The warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light **flashes**, to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Fault: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does **not illuminate again** after the engine is switched on again, the ESC is fully functional again.

Further information » page 154.

Note

The warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Anti lock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Fault: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- If the warning light together with the warning light » page 35, *Brake system* illuminates, **do not continue to drive!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of accident.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if a lamp is faulty.

The warning light **illuminates** within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty lamp is switched **on**.

The following message may be shown in the MAXI DOT display, for example.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **flashes** for 1 minute while driving or after switching on the ignition, there is a problem with the adaptive headlights.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

No bend lighting (AHL) function. Owner's manual!

When the AHL mode "tourist light" (travel mode) is active » page 71, the warning light **flashes** for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** after the ignition has been turned **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light **does not** come on at all or **illuminates continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light EPC **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning light **illuminates**, rust has accumulated in the filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out.

✓ 4th or 5th is selected (automatic transmission: position S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1,800 - 2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does **not go out** and the warning light begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Diesel particulate filter: Owner's manual!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the warning light, also **illuminates**.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

- We recommend avoiding regularly driving short distances to assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates**, if the fuel level is less than approx. 10.5 litres.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Fault: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, even if one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:
› The warning light **illuminates** for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched **on** and then **flashes** again for approximately 12 seconds.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the front passenger's front airbag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:
› The warning light **illuminates** for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched **on**;
› The deactivated air bag is indicated by the illumination of the warning light **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel » page 21.

! WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre inflation pressure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light ⓘ is illuminated
If while driving, the warning light ⓘ illuminates, a tyre pressure change has occurred.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

› Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 198.
› Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the wheel » page 205 or use the repair kit » page 209.
› Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 166.

The warning light ⓘ flashes for about 1 min. and remains lit
If the warning light ⓘ flashes for approximately 1 minute and stays on, there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light ⓘ flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The following reasons can explain the warning light ⓘ being illuminated.
› The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
› Snow chains are mounted.
› A wheel has been changed.

Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 166.

! CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light ⓘ in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

i Note

The ⓘ warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light **illuminates**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » page 188, *Windscreen washer system*.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check brake wear!

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

Either the left or the right warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light **flashes** at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to **flash**.

Low beam

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when low beam is selected.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the fog lamps are operating.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the cruise control is active.

Selector lever lock / starter (system KESSY)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary to move the selector lever from position **P** and **N** » page 146or to start the engine in vehicles with the KESSY system » page 142.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is being operated.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding warning light in the instrument cluster.

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- Data relating to the multi function display (MFD) » page 44.
- Data relating to the MAXI DOT display » page 46.
- Service interval display » page 48.
- Auto Check Control » page 33.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic transmission » page 145.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

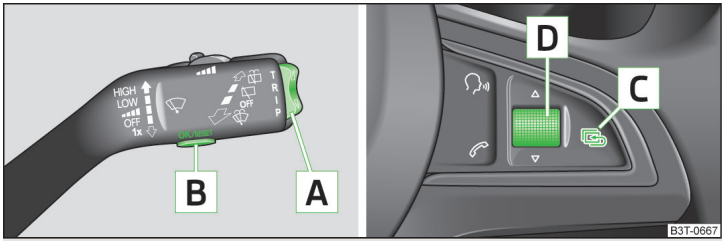


Fig. 27 **Buttons / wheel: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 27.

Description of the operation

Button/ wheel	Action	Function
A	Briefly push up or down	Select data / set data values
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To return up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
	Press button for a long period of time	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Display in the MAXI DOT display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄ icon appears immediately.

Prompt in the segment display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display will show up with the following icon before this occurs ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄ icon appear immediately.

After pressing button A » Fig. 27 *on page 42*, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING
Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

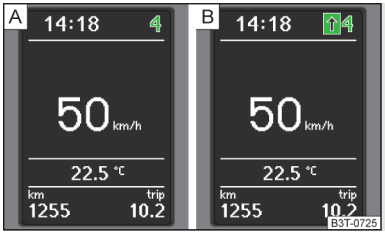


Fig. 28
Information on the selected gear / gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

Display » Fig. 28

A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear

Recommended gear
The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

The **recommended** [1] gear and the arrow icon [2] is displayed.
› ↑ - Recommends that you shift to a **higher** gear
› ↓ - Recommends that you shift to a **lower** gear

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **manual gearboxes** this indicates that it is better to shift from a lower gear to the 4th gear.

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **automatic gearboxes** and are in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic), this indicates that it is better to shift from the 4th gear to a higher gear.

! WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment
A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces engine noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the life and reliability of the engine.

[1] With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear is** shown.
[2] For vehicles with segment display the arrow is displayed behind the gear indication.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the boot or bonnet is open, the warning lights or and come on in the instrument cluster » page 34, *Warning lights*.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFD** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 46, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 47, *Settings*.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory

Fig. 29
Multi function display - memory display

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

In memory the values of elements of the multifunction display(e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The multifunction display is equipped with two memories, **1** and **2**.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A » Fig. 29

1 Single-trip memory
2 Total-trip memory

Select memory
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Resetting
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold button B or adjustment wheel D » Fig. 27 *on page 42*.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1 999 kilometres driven (S), and a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9 999 kilometres driven (M).

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.
› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

This information is always shown on vehicles with a MAXI DOT display.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » page 44, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes (S) and 99 hours and 59 minutes (M). The indicator is set back to zero when this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km[1].

Set the memory to zero at the start of a new measurement if you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period » page 44, *Memory*. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and with the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. The value is displayed in steps of 5 km after the ⛽ has come on.

The fuel consumption over the preceding 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

Reset the memory to zero if you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment » page 44, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km. (S) and 9 999 km (M). The indicator is set back to zero when this period is exceeded. ▸

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[2] On some models in certain countries, – -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

Set the memory to zero at the start of measurement to determine the average speed over a certain period » page 44, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 2 » Fig. 21 *on page 30*.

Oil temperature[1]
If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, – –.– symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against speeding
Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns » page 46, *Warning at excessive speeds*.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item[2].
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds. Your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› +Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display) menu item appears in the display with the limit set.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** Depending on the vehicle equipment, it also provides you with data relating to the radio, multifunction display (MFD), mobile phone, navigation system, automatic gearbox and devices connected via the MDI input. Furthermore, it allows the adjustment of some other features of your vehicle.

[1] Applies for vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.
[2] An initial value of 30 km/h is displayed automatically if no value has been specified.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

Press and hold button A or C » Fig. 27 *on page 42* to activate the **MAIN MENU**. By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 44
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 121;
- **Aux. heating** » page 118
- **Assist systems** » page 165
- **Vehicle status** » page 33
- **Settings** » page 47

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 42, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Using the factory fitted radio or navigation system » *Radio operating instructions* or» *Navigation system operating instructions*.

Settings

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

You can change certain settings yourself through the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
You can set the language for the display texts here.

Automatic blind (Combi)
This is where the automatic roll up function of the boot roll cover can be deactivated/activated when opening the boot lid.

MFD data
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Convenience
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here.

Rain closing	Activate/deactivate the function for automatically closing the window and the tilt/slide sunroof in a locked vehicle when it starts raining[a]. If the function is activated and it is not raining, the windows including the panoramic tilt/slide sunroof will **close** automatically after approx. 12 hours.
ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system. Further information » page 55.
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function, also applies to the KESSY system. Further information » page 54, *Individual settings*.
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here. Further information » page 63, *Window convenience operation*.
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when in the reverse gear[b]. Further information » page 80, *Fold in passenger's mirror*.
Mirror adjust.	Activation / deactivation of the synchronous exterior mirror function settings. Further information » page 80, *Synchronous adjustment of the mirror*.
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

[a] This function is only available on vehicles with a rain sensor.
[b] This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights and visibility
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here.

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function. Further information » page 72.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function. Further information » page 72.
Footwell light	Activate/deactivate and adjust the footwell light intensity.
Dayl. dri. light	Activate/deactivate "DAY LIGHT" function. Further information » page 69, *Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)*.
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping. Further information » page 78, *Automatic rear window wiper (Superb Combi)*.
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the lane ch. flash function. Further information » page 70.
Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature. Further information » page 71, *Tourist lights (Travel mode)*.
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter times can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed can be adjusted. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 197.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres max. speed ... km/h.

Units of measurement
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Assist systems
The tones of the audible signals for the parking aid can be adjusted here.

Alt. speed dis.
Display of the second speed in mph[1] can be activated here.

Further information » page 33, *Display of the second speed*.

Service
The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Further information » page 48, *Service interval display*.

Factory setting
The display functions can be restored to their factory settings here.

Compass point display

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown on the top left-hand corner of the display.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

[1] On models on which the speedometer indicates mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or days until the service due date is reached.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note

Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Display in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service
If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 47, *Settings* or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the MAXI DOTdisplay. » page 47, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Prompt in the segment display

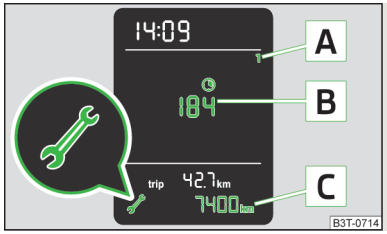


Fig. 30
Segment display: Example of a message

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 30

- Service due
- A Differentiating between types of service
- B Days remaining until the next service interval
- C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service
The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 30.

1 Oil change service
2 Inspection

Service due
If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 30.

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service
You can press button 3 » Fig. 21 *on page 30* repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

[1)] The kilometres remaining until the next service are displayed instead of the odometer.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 3 is pressed again.
› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and luggage compartment lid at the same time based on the current setting[1].

The safe securing system » page 54 is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks[2] are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » !.

The following is true after unlocking[1]
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, illuminates.
› The safe securing system is switched off[2].
› The warning icon in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following is true after locking[1]
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior light switched by the door contact goes off.
› The safe securing system is switched on[2].

[1] Depending on the individual setting » page 54.
[2] This function applies only to vehicles with specific equipment or for some countries.

› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Displaying an error
If the warning icon in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

WARNING
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- If the car is locked from the outside and the safe lock system is switched on, no one must be in the car, as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life.

Note
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Upon failure of the central locking system the key can only be used to unlock and lock the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency opened or emergency released.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 216.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 217.

Vehicle key

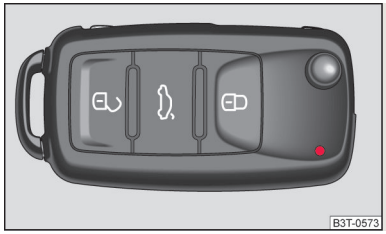


Fig. 31
Remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

Two remote control keys are provided with the vehicle» Fig. 31.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

The wireless key has a flip out key bit.

The spare key must by initialised by a specialist garage after repair or replacement of the receiver unit. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

CAUTION
- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 215.
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Note
Please contact a specialist garage if you lose a key as they can obtain a new one for you.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

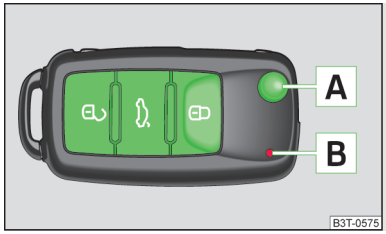


Fig. 32
Remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 32

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid

A Button for the fold out / fold in of the key

B Warning light

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe lock system[1] or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 84.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 84.

Checking the battery condition
If the red warning light B » Fig. 32 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key the battery is dead. Replace the battery » page 215.

! CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.

i Note
For vehicles with anti-theft alarm the acoustic signals can also be activated/deactivated by locking/unlocking » page 47.

Opening/closing a door

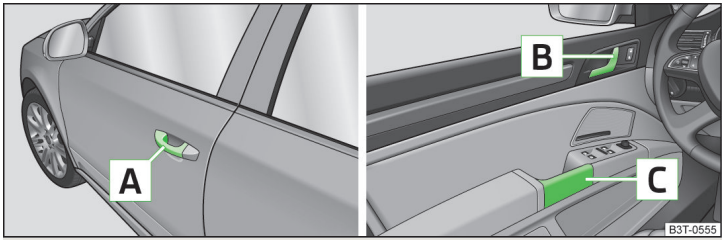


Fig. 33 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle.
› Pull on door handle A » Fig. 33 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door handle B of the door and push the door away from you.

[1] This function applies only to vehicles with specific equipment or for some countries.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING
- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while the vehicle is being driven – there is a risk of death.
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing sweep – there is a risk of injury.
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – there is a risk of injury.
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

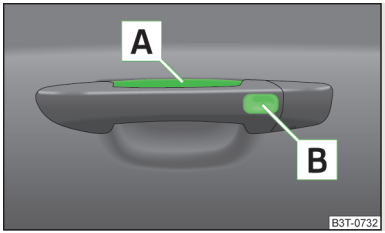


Fig. 34
Sensors in the handle of the front door

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Sensors in the handle of the front door » Fig. 34

A Unlocking sensor
B Locking sensor

Unlocking
› Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor A » Fig. 34 » ! with the whole palm of your hand.

Locking
› Touch the sensor B » Fig. 34 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » page 57.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor B, it is not possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor A - prevents accidental unlocking.

CAUTION
- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.
- The vehicle cannot be locked if the ignition has not been turned off.

Information messages KESSY

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

Key in the vehicle
The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following condition is met.
✓ The vehicle, including the boot lit, has been locked.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**
S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, .

System fault
If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**
S **CHECK KEYLESS**

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Change the key battery!**
S **KEY BATTERY**

Change the key battery » page 215!

Safe securing

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot now be opened from the inside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!
CHECK DEADLOCK

Switching off
The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the interior monitoring » page 56, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the SafeLock system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch on display
The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch off display
The warning light in the driver door flashes fast for about 2 seconds, goes out and starts to flash regularly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

! WARNING
If the car is locked and the SafeLock system activated, no one may remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note
This function applies only to vehicles with specific equipment or for some countries.

Individual settings

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

The following central locking functions can be set via the MAXI DOT display » page 47, *Settings*.

Opening a single door
This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button.

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

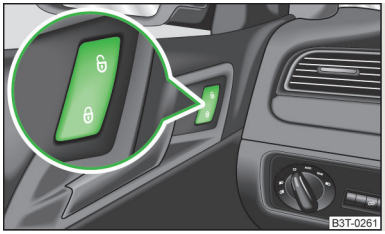


Fig. 35
Central locking button

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, it can also be unlocked and locked with the rocker switch on the door opening lever of the driver or front passenger door » Fig. 35 even without the ignition switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking

› Press the button / » Fig. 35 press.

The symbol in the button illuminates.

Unlocking

› Press the button / » Fig. 35 press.

The symbol in the button goes out.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

› It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- If the safe lock system is switched on » page 54, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock

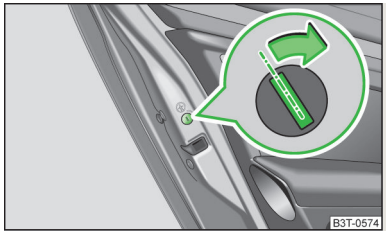


Fig. 36
Child safety lock: Left rear door

Read and observe ! on page 51 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 36 (the other way around on the right-hand door).

Switching off

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 36 (the other way around on the right-hand door).

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm

The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

› Opening the bonnet.
› Opening the boot lid.
› Opening the doors.
› Manipulation of the ignition lock.
› Towing the vehicle » page 56.
› Movement in the vehicle » page 56.
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
› Uncoupling the trailer » page 170, *Attaching and detaching trailers*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

Activating
The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Note
▪ If the car is unlocked with the key in the driver door, insert the key into the ignition and switch the ignition to deactivate the alarm system.
▪ You can switch the audible signalling of the activation of the warning system on and off in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **ATA confirm** » page 47.

Interior monitor and towing protection

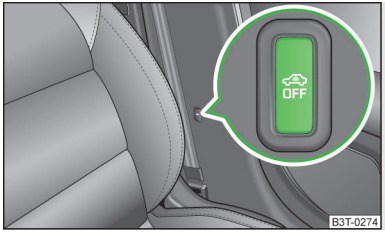


Fig. 37
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 37 on the B-column on the driver's side.

The symbol lighting in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the SafeLock system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, as otherwise this could crack – there is a risk of injury.
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

CAUTION

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed » page 58.

Note

- The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.
- Repeated opening and closing of the boot lid can lead to a temporary failure of the function due to the overheating protection of the motors of the Twindoor system.

Twindoor - open/close small boot lid

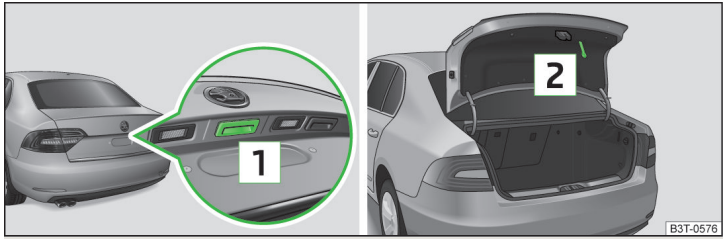


Fig. 38 **Handle of boot lid/opened small boot lid**

Read and observe and on page 57 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the button in the handle at the lower edge of the boot lid 1 » Fig. 38 and lift the boot lid.

Closing

› Pull down and strike the lid with the handle 2 » Fig. 38.

The small boot lid can also be opened by pressing the symbol button on the remote control key » page 52.

TwinDoor - open / close large boot

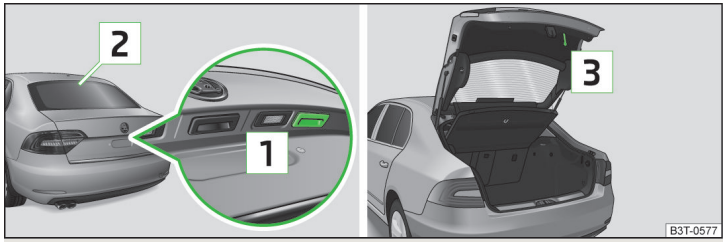


Fig. 39 **Handle of boot lid / opened large boot lid**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the button in the handle at the lower edge of the boot lid 1 » Fig. 39.
› Wait until the brake light 2 in the rear window flashes twice and then lift the lid.

Closing

› Pull down and strike the lid with the handle 3 » Fig. 39.

Open / close (Superb Combi)

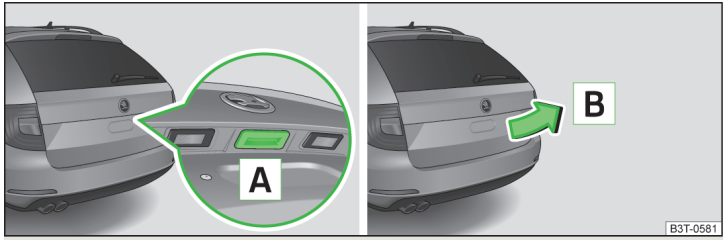


Fig. 40 **Boot lid handle/opening the boot lid**

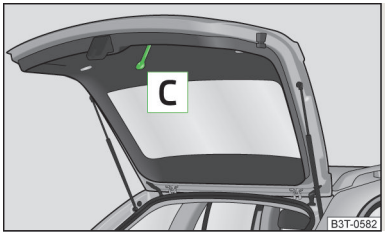


Fig. 41
Handle in the inner panelling of the boot lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the handle A » Fig. 40 and raise the lid in the direction of the arrow B.

Closing

› Pull the lid down with the handle C » Fig. 41 and close with a slight swing.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button on the remote control key.

Electric boot lid (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Force limiter
The electric luggage compartment lid (hereinafter referred to only as a lid) is equipped with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation
Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases. It must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible » .

WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION
- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not attempt to close the door manually during electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the system of an electric valve operation.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo. Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.

CAUTION
- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- The flap is always to be close before disconnecting the battery.

Operating description

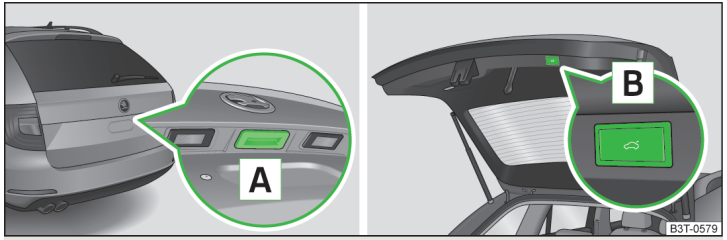


Fig. 42 **Operation of the lid**

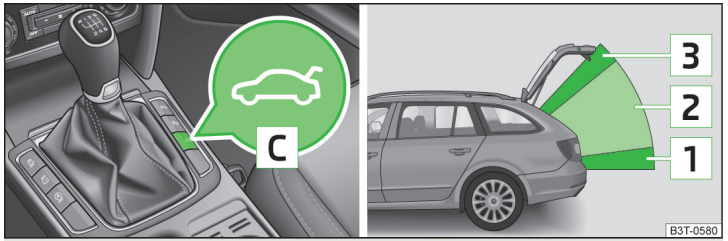


Fig. 43 **Button for the flap operation / operation areas**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.
› With the symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
› With the button in the handle A on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 42.
› With the button B on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 42.
› With the button C in the centre console » Fig. 43.

Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 43. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area 3 changes depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 61.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area 2, the area 3 is not active. The range of the area 2 changes depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

☑ Feasible action
☐ Non-feasible action
⮌ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle A

Action	Closed Lid	Range » Fig. 43			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	⮌	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⮌	☑	☑

The operation of the lid using the handle A is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button B

Action	Closed Lid	Range			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☑	⮌	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⮌	☑	☑

Operating the lid with the button B is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C

Action	Closed Lid	Range			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button C does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Meaning
Interrupted tone	Open (using the button on the remote control key or the button C » Fig. 43 *on page 60*) Automatic closing of the lid » page 59, ! in section *Introduction*
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Adjusting

› Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 42 *on page 59* for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

› Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 42 *on page 59* for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.
› When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
› For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid.

Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 217
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 59 Press handle A and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 63. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- Deactivating the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors is recommended (safety push button) S when children are being transported in the rear seats » Fig. 44 *on page 62*.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 179, *Windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 63.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using button A » Fig. 44 *on page 62*.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
- The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

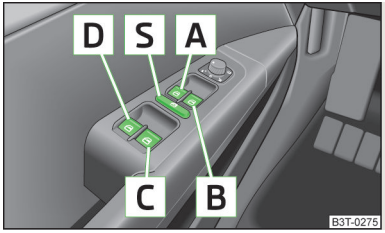


Fig. 44
Buttons on the driver's door

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Power window buttons » Fig. 44

- A Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
- B Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
- C Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
- D Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
- S Safety pushbutton

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch S » Fig. 44. The buttons for the electrical power windows at the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety push button S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch S illuminates.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

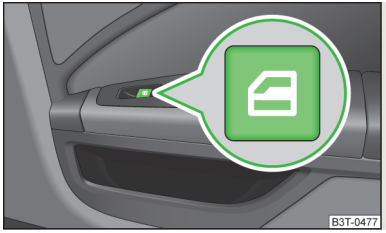


Fig. 45
Button in the rear door

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limit

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe and on page 62 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
› Press and hold the upper part of the central locking button in the driver's door » page 55.
› Hold button A » Fig. 44 *on page 62* in the opening position.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Press and hold the lower part of the central locking button » page 55 in the driver's door.
› Hold button A » Fig. 44 *on page 62* in the closing position.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor B » Fig. 34 *on page 53*.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Window op.** . » page 47.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the key or the respective button is released.

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Drag and drop the button upwards again and hold for about 1 s.

Electric sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The electric sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. In this case, turn the rotary switch to the switch position A » Fig. 46 *on page 64* and push forward for about 10 seconds.

Operation

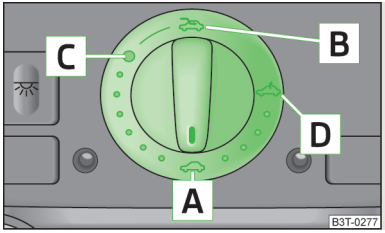


Fig. 46
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Comfort position

› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 46.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially
› Simply turn the knob to a point between A and C.

Open fully
› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof
› Turn the switch to position D.

Closing
› Turn the switch to position A.

Sun screen
The sun screen is also opened automatically when the tilt/slide sunroof slides open. When the tilt/slide sunroof is closed the sun screen can be manually operated » !.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. The sliding/tilting roof can be closed completely without the force limiter by pushing the switch in position A » Fig. 46 forwards until the sliding/tilting roof is completely closed.

! WARNING
When operating the tilt/slide sunroof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION
During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor B » Fig. 34 *on page 53*.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor B » Fig. 34 *on page 53*.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor B when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

! WARNING
Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Electric sliding/tilting roof with solar cells

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

If there is sufficient bright sunlight, the solar cells in the sliding/tilting roof deliver the electrical power for the fresh air blower. Further information » page 115, *Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)*.

The operation of the sliding/tilting roof with solar cells is the same as of a normal sliding/tilting roof.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Superb Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position A » Fig. 47 *on page 66* , pull the recess firmly

downwards and hold forwards firmly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

▪ If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position A » Fig. 47 *on page 66*and press and hold the button G » Fig. 48 *on page 66*. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

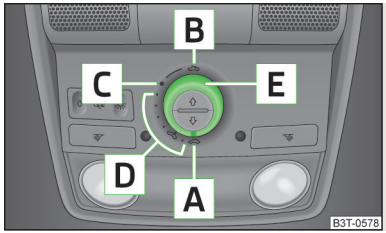


Fig. 47
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Comfort position
› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 47.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially
› Turn the switch to a position in area D.

Open fully
› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch in the region E towards the roof.

Closing
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess E down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » !.

! WARNING
When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION
During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

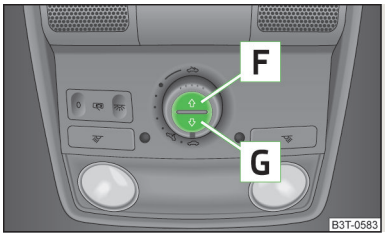


Fig. 48
Buttons for sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 48.

Opening
› Briefly press the button F » Fig. 48 to open fully.
› Press and hold the button F to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing
› Briefly press the button G » Fig. 48 to close fully.
› Press and hold the button G to close in the desired position.

The closing process stops when one releases the button.

WARNING

When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor A or B » Fig. 34 *on page 53*.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key or hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position, or for the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor B » Fig. 34 *on page 53* » !.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor B when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 49 *on page 68*. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 179, *Headlight lenses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet areas are free from condensation after a short time, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up around the edge. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Operating the lights and the instrument illumination

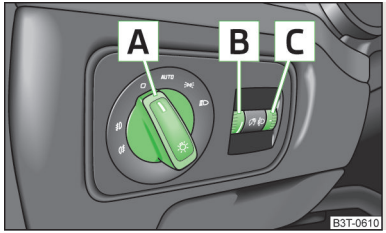


Fig. 49
Light switches, knobs for headlight beam adjustment and brightness of instrument illumination

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A» Fig. 49 can be moved to the following positions.

Turn switch

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 70
Switching on the parking light or parking lights » page 73
Switch on low beam

Pull switch

Switch on the front fog lamp » page 71
Switching on the rear fog light » page 71

Headlight range control

Turning the dial B » Fig. 49 from the position — to 3 gradually adjusts the headlight range control and thereby shortens the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Instrument lighting

Turning the rotary switch C » Fig. 49 when the lights are switched on adjusts the brightness of the instrument lighting » Fig. 49.

The instruments are also illuminated when the parking light, low or high beam light is switched on.

Bi-Xenon headlights

The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- The light switch is in position or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The parking light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam illuminates automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The daytime running lights (hereafter only function) provide lighting for the front of the vehicle.

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 49 *on page 68*.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The parking aid is activated.

Deactivating the function
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turn signal- and main beam lever (» Fig. 50 *on page 69*) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating the function
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, the function can be enabled or disabled in the menu item **Dayl. dri. light** » page 47 .

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the parking lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

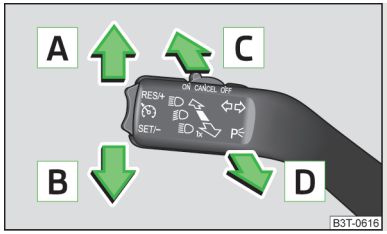


Fig. 50
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 50
A Switch on right turn signal
B Switch on left turn signal
C Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position)
D Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam
The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the high beam is switched on.

Flasher
The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the headlight flasher is switched on.

Flashing
When the left turn signal switch is switched on, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right turn signal switch is switched on, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you wish to flash three times only, briefly push **the stalk** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "Lane ch. flash" can be activated or deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the **Lane ch. flash**» page 47 menu item.

WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control

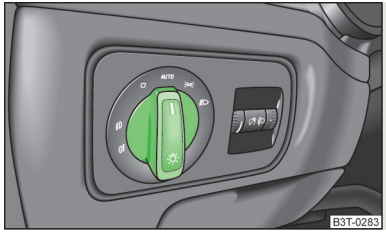


Fig. 51
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 51, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light on/off switching is controlled by a sensor mounted under the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also illuminates.

Automatic driving-light control during rain
The low beam lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 51.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position 1 or wiping - position 2 or 3 is turned on » page 78, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

CAUTION
Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen. This can impair its function or reliability.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The AHL system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The AHL system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle to the driving speed or the use of the wiper.

The AHL system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO** .» page 70

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode
The light cone in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that this and the adjacent pavements, intersections, pedestrian crossings, etc. are illuminated. The mode is active at speeds of 15 - 50 km / h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode activates progressively from a speed of 90 km / h onward. It is most efficient at a speeds above 120 km / h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all AHL modes.

Tourist lights (Travel mode)
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When this mode is active, the above mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights are deactivated.

This mode can be enabled or disabled via the MAXI DOT display in the **Travel mode**» page 48, **Lights and visibility** menu option.

WARNING

If the AHL system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning light flashes for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Fog lights

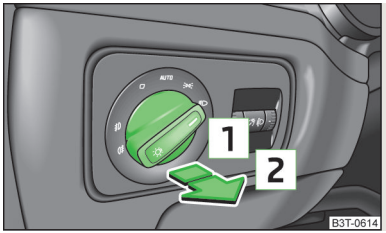


Fig. 52
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 52.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 34.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on the relevant side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 52 *on page 71*.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 34.

When in reverse gear only the rear fog lamp illuminates on the driver's side.

[1] If both switch on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer illuminates if the vehicle has a factory fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 51 *on page 70*.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The function is switched on (the driver's door is opened / the car is unlocked with the remote control).

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

- › Parking lights
- › Low beam
- › Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
- › Licence plate light

Poorer visibility is evaluated by sensor mounted in the holder of the interior mirror.

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked.

Activate/deactivate the function

The functions and settings of the illumination time can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home** » page 47.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen. This can impair its function or reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul travel.

Hazard warning light system

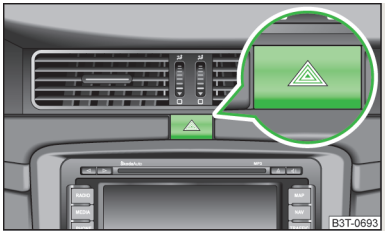


Fig. 53
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Switching on/off

› Press the ⚠ » Fig. 53 button.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic jam.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The parking light is designed for temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the parking light
› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 50 *on page 69* - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side lights on both sides
› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 49 *on page 68* and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Note

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

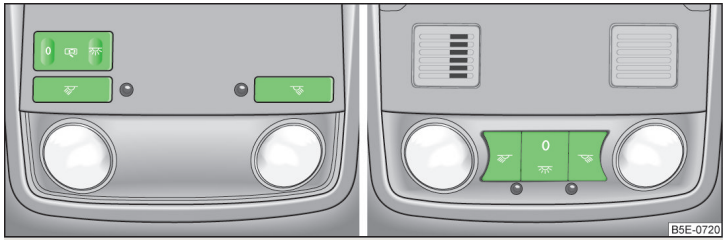


Fig. 54 **Operation of the front interior light: Version 1/version 2**

Rocker switch positions » Fig. 54
- Switching on
- **0** Switching off
- Control with the door contact switch (middle position)

There is no icon available for the center position (operation with the door contact switch) in Version 2.

Switch for reading lights
- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for operation of light with the door contact switch - setting
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting that illuminates the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting illuminates.

Rear interior light - Variant 1

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

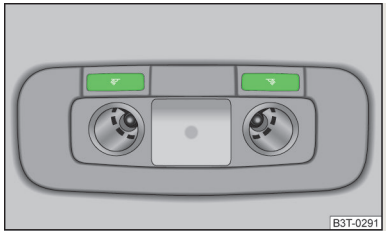


Fig. 55
Interior light and rear reading lights

Switch for reading lights » Fig. 55

- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » page 73.

Rear interior light - Variant 2

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

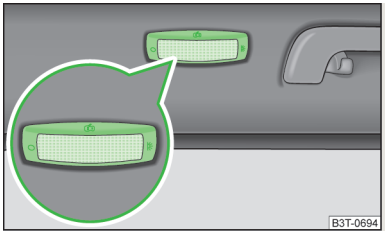


Fig. 56
Interior lights at the rear

The light is operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » Fig. 56.

- Switching on
- Control with the door contact switch (middle position)[1)]
- Switching off

Front door warning light

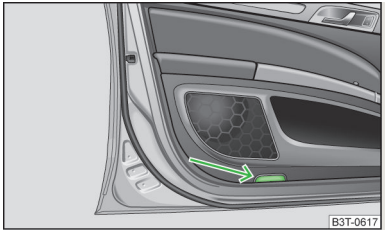


Fig. 57
Warning light

The warning light » Fig. 57 turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

In vehicles without a warning light only a reflector is installed at this point.

[1)] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 73 .

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light extinguishes automatically after around 20 minutes.

Entry lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light illuminates after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 1 minute.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater

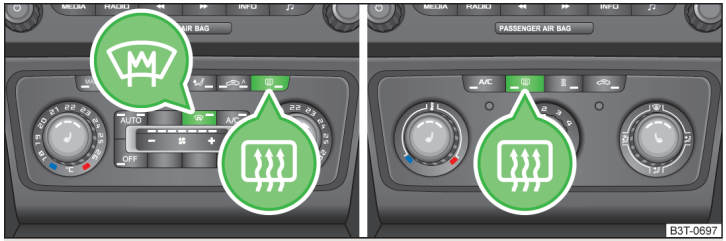


Fig. 58 **Buttons for the rear and front window heating Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

Buttons for the heating in the centre console » Fig. 58

- Switching the rear window heater on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp illuminates inside the button.

The heater only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 151, *Saving electrical energy*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 197, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

Sun visors

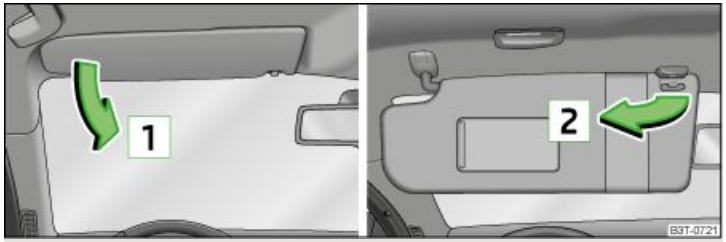


Fig. 59 **Sun visor: fold down / pivot to door**

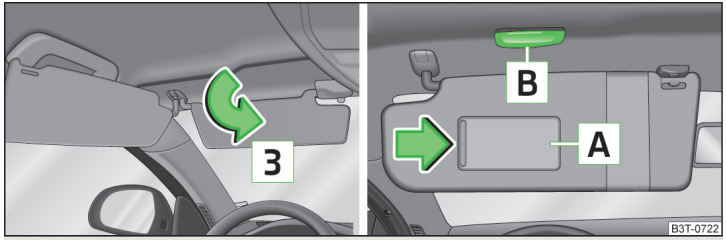


Fig. 60 **Sun visor: Auxiliary panel fold down / makeup mirror**

Sun visors » Fig. 59, » Fig. 60

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
3 Fold down the auxiliary cover
A Make up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow
B Light - turns on automatically when the cover slides open

While sliding the cover A or when lifting the cover, the light turns off B.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Sun screen

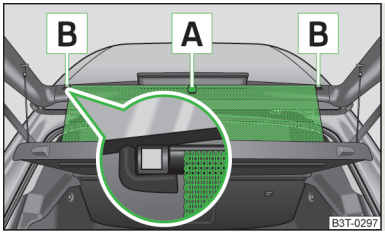


Fig. 61
Unroll the sun screen

The sun screen is located in the lower part of the boot cover.

Extending

› Pull the sun screen on the handle A » Fig. 61 and hang it in the magnetic brackets B.

Retracting

› Remove the sun screen from the magnetic brackets B and hold it on the handle A so that it can slowly roll up into the housing on the boot cover without being damaged.

Note

Do not place any objects that react sensitively to influences of magnetic fields (watches, electronics, etc.) in the immediate vicinity of the magnetic brackets. They can be damaged by the magnetic field.

Sun screen in the rear doors

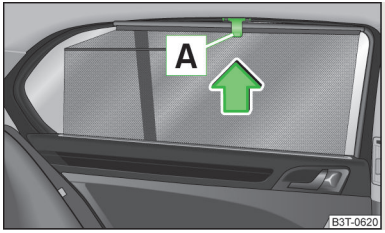


Fig. 62
Rear door: Sun screen

Extending

› Pull out the sun screen with the handle A » Fig. 62 and hang it in the bracket on the top edge of the door.

Retracting

› Remove the sun screen from the handle A » Fig. 62 and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 188.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 219.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully release frozen wiper blades off the windscreen.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreen cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » page 177.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

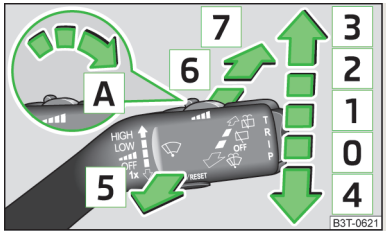


Fig. 63
Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Lever positions

0	OFF	Wipers off
1	....	Periodic windscreen wiping / automatic wiping in rain
2	LOW	Slow windscreen wiping
3	HIGH	Rapid windscreen wiping
4	1x	Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 219, (spring-loaded position)
5		Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-loaded position)
6		Wiping the rear window (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
7		Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-loaded position)
A	....	Switches for setting: the desired pause between the individual wiper strokes / the speed of the wiping in rain (operating lever in the position 1)

Interval windscreen wiping ....
The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent regulated.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ....
The wiping intervals are controlled depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 3 - 4 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (Superb Combi)
The wash system operates immediately, the wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). The operating lever remains in position » Fig. 63 6.

Automatic rear window wiper (Superb Combi)
If the lever is in position 2 » Fig. 63 or 3 the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Rear wiper** » page 47.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 219.

Note

- If the operating lever is in the position 2 or 3 and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km/h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting 5 » Fig. 63 *on page 78*), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 179, *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – there is risk of damage.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, condensation or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

! WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for several minutes plenty of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

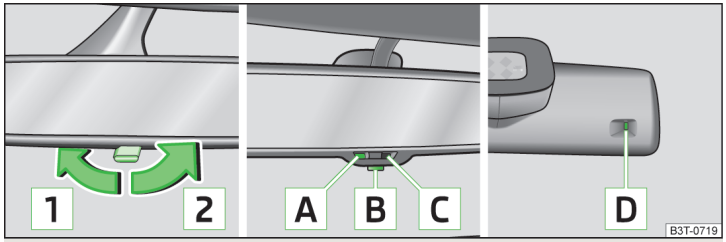


Fig. 64 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-dimming / light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 64

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror dimming

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 64

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » !.

! WARNING

The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the sensors is not affected by other objects.

i Note

If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Exterior mirrors

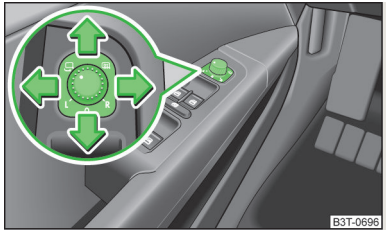


Fig. 65
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on the vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater
Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjust the position
The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 65.

The movement of the mirror surface follows the movement of the rotary knob.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror
› Activate the synchronous adjustment of the mirror above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror adjust.** » page 47, *Settings*.
› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 15 km/h.

The mirrors are folded out into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position to a different one.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› Close all windows.
› Press on the remote control key for about 2 seconds.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 79.

Memory function for mirrors
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirrors when saving the driver's seat position with » page 84, *Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat* or » page 84, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Fold in passenger's mirror
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger side mirror can tilt down to improve the view to the kerb when reversing.

The mirror will be folded automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** » page 47, *Settings*.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The mirror setting was previously stored » page 84, *Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat* or » page 84, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces if the exterior mirror heater is switched on - risk of burns.

CAUTION

▪ The exterior mirrors with fold in function never mechanically fold by hand - there is a risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
▪ When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

▪ The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
▪ If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and practical features

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following reasons.
› Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

▪ Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
▪ Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
▪ The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
▪ Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
▪ Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seat) – risk of accident!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing settings are deleted.

Manually adjusting the front seats

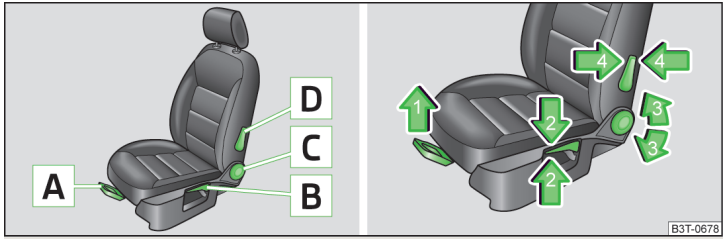


Fig. 66 **Controls / setting**

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 66 in the direction of the arrow **1** and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push/pull the lever B » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows**2**.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel C » Fig. 66 in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Adjusting lumbar support

› Push the lever D » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows**4**.

Electric front seat adjustment

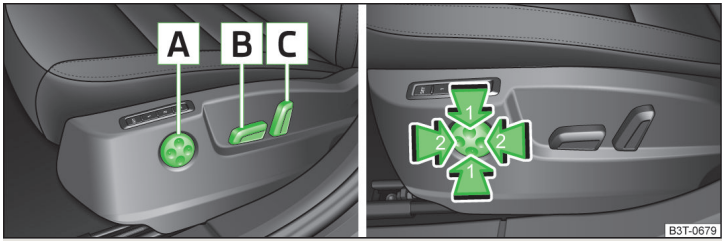


Fig. 67 **Adjusting controls / lumbar support**

Fig. 68 **Setting: Seat pad / backrest**

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Push the switch B » Fig. 67 in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 68.

Set the height of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 67 in the direction of one of the arrows **5** » Fig. 68.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 67 in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 68.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Push the switch C » Fig. 67 in the direction of one of the arrows **6** » Fig. 68.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows**2** » Fig. 67.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows**1** » Fig. 67.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 84 or the remote control key » page 84.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints

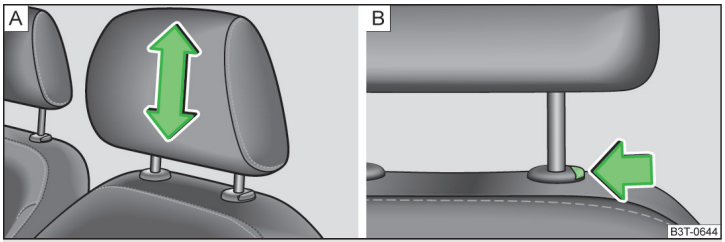


Fig. 69 **Head restraints: Setting / removing**

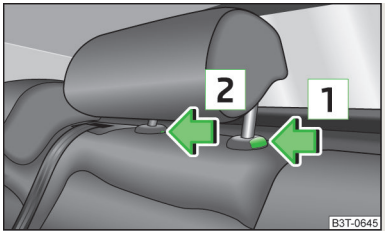


Fig. 70
Rear centre head rests in vehicles with the TOP TETHER system

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Setting height

› Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 69 - A.

› To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 69 - B with one hand and push the head restraint down with the other hand.

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Removing/installing

› Fold the seat slightly forward before removing the rear head restraint.
› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 69 - B and pull the head restraint out.
› To reinsert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Removing and installing rear middle head rest

Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 70 simultaneously press the locking button into the opening 2 using a flathead screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head rest.
› To reinsert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and correctly set (may not be in the bottom position) - there is a risk of fatal injury!

Note

The middle rear head restraint is adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of the electrically adjustable seat

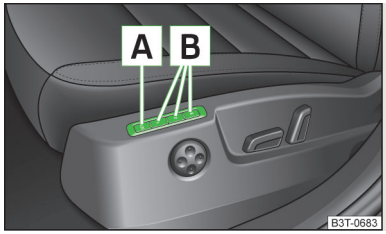


Fig. 71
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 71 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 80.
› Press the button SET A » Fig. 71.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgement sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » page 47.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 71.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 80.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 80.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting
› **Briefly** press the desired memory button B » Fig. 71 with the ignition on.

or

› **Press and hold** the desired memory button B with the ignition off or when the ignition is on and travelling at a speed of more than 5 km / h.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note
Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to restore the setting of the individual exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

Enable automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 71 *on page 84*.
› After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key[1].

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** The lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side when reversing must be enabled » page 47.

› Unlock the vehicle using the respective remote control key.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 80.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 80.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 71 *on page 84*. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

[1] The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

Seat heaters

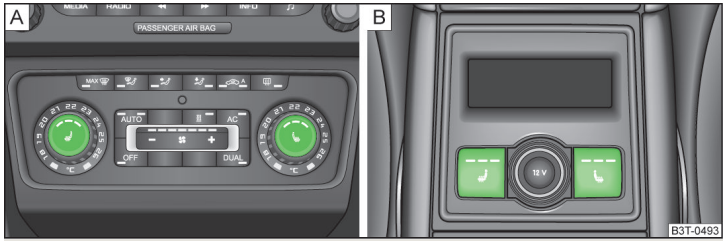


Fig. 72 **Heating: Front seats/ rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on the front seat heater
› Press the controller in the area of the symbols and » Fig. 72 - A

Switch on rear seat heater
› Press the symbol button or » Fig. 72 - B.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by all three of the warning lights in the switch illuminating.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the heating is turned down until it goes off.

The seat heating level is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the respective control.

If the engine is switched off and then turned on again within 10 mins with the rear seat heating switched, then each rear seat heating is automatically turned on again.

WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heater in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heater.
  - The seats are not occupied.
  - Items are fastened to or stored on the seats e.g. child seat, bags etc.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 182, *Seat covers*.

Note

- If the rear seat heating is set to the highest intensity - level 3, it is automatically switched over to level 2 after 10 minutes (two warning lights are illuminated on the switch).
- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically in order to provide sufficient electrical power for the engine control » page 197.

Ventilated front seats

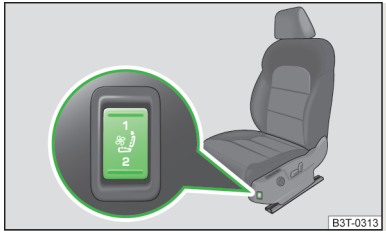


Fig. 73
Rocker switch for the seat ventilation

Heat and condensation can be removed from the seat cushions and seat backrests on the front seats.

The ventilation is operated using the rocker switch » Fig. 73 in the front part of the seat cushion, in front of the seat control elements for the electric front seat adjustment.

Switching on

› Switch the rocker switch to position **1** - lower intensity and to position **2** - higher intensity.

Switching off

› Switch the rocker switch to the centre position.

WARNING

If you or a passenger have limited pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. caused by medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you consult your physician before using the ventilated front seat.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The fan is located underneath the front seat cushion. Do not place any objects in this area - it may damage the fan.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture. Clean the seat covers » page 182, *Seat covers*.

Note

- The ventilation should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- We do not recommend using the front seat ventilation and heating at the same time. Using the ventilation to cool the seat surface considerably reduces the heating capacity, at the same time affecting the ability of the control unit to detect the right seat surface temperature.

Convenience features of passenger seat

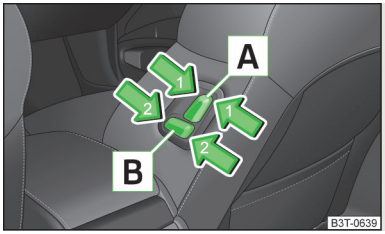


Fig. 74
Operating passenger seat from the rear seat

The front passenger seat can also be operated from the rear seat.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 74.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
› Push the switch B in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 74 .

Front armrest

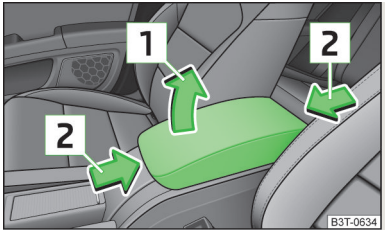


Fig. 75
Adjusting armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting height
› First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 75 to one of the 4 fixed positions.

Move
› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 75.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 92.

Note
Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Rear armrest

Fig. 76
Fold the armrest forwards

Folding forward
› Fold down the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 76.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 90.

Seat backrests

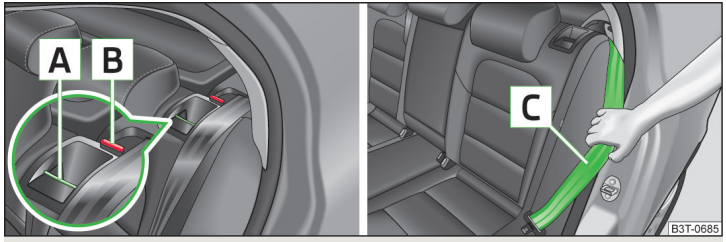


Fig. 77 **Pull seat back / seat belt to the side panel to unlock**

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend taking out the rear head restraints before the seat backrests are folded forward, to achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible » !.

Fold down split seat backrest

› Press the release knob A » Fig. 77.
› Fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Fold down undivided seat backrest

› Push the release handles A » Fig. 77 on both sides of the seat backrest at the same time.
› Fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Fold back split seat backrest

› If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards » page 83.
› Hold the rear outer seat belt C » Fig. 77 against the side trim panel.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

Fold back undivided seat backrest

› If you removed the head restraints, you need to reinsert them with the backrest tilted slightly forwards » page 83.
› Hold the rear outer seat belts C » Fig. 77 against the side trim panel.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the release levers A on either side of the seat back click into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pins B on both sides of the seat back are not visible.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.
- In occupied rear seats make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- Store the head restraints that were removed in such a way that they are not damaged or soiled.

Rear seat folded forward (Superb Combi)

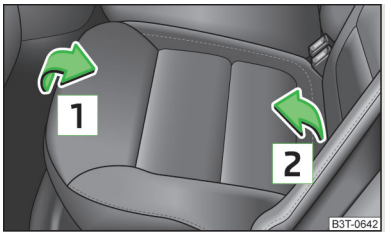


Fig. 78
Folding the seat cushion forwards

› Pull up the seat squab in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 78 and fold forwards in the direction of the arrow 2.

i Note

To achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible, the rear head restraints can be removed before folding the seat backrests forwards. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not damaged or soiled.

Practical features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down while you are driving (under acceleration or when cornering) and could distract you from the traffic - there is a risk of an accident.
- Make sure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell while you are driving. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays.

Car park ticket holder

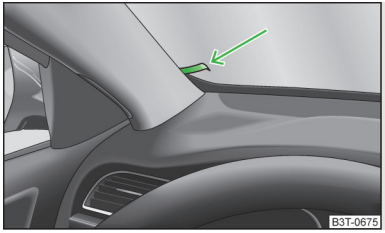


Fig. 79
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

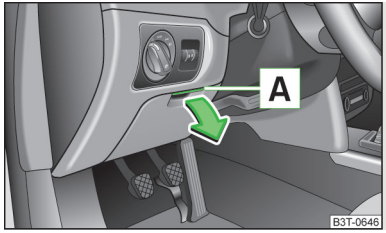


Fig. 80
Open the storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Raise the handle A » Fig. 80 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

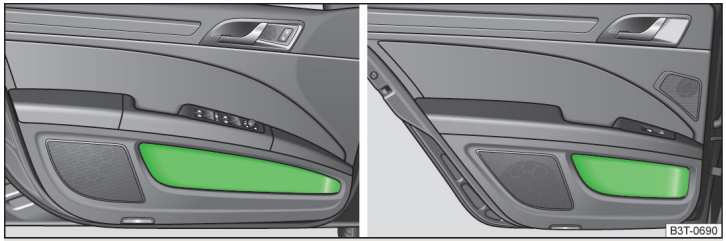


Fig. 81 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

! WARNING

Use the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

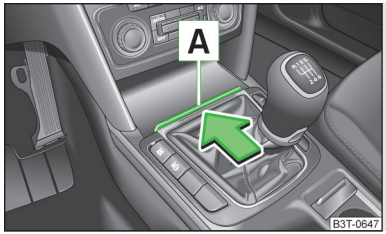


Fig. 82
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Open/close

› Press on the edge of the roof A » Fig. 82 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must never be used as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - fire hazard and risk of damage to the storage compartment!

i Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking light is on.

Cup holders

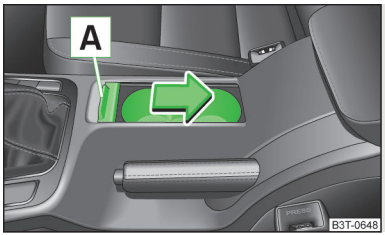


Fig. 83
Front centre console: Cup holder

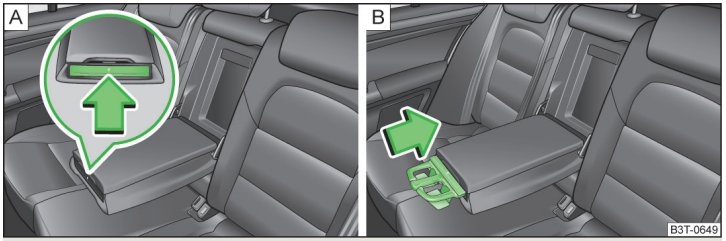


Fig. 84 **Rear armrest: Remove cup holder/insert cup holder**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Cup holder at the front

On vehicles that are fitted with a cover for cup holders, you can cover the cup holder by pulling on the handle A » Fig. 83 in the direction of the arrow.

Rear cup holder

› Press on the front end of the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 84 - A, the cup holder comes out.
› To slide the cup holder in again, press the middle part of the cup holder » Fig. 84 - B and slide it into the armrest in the direction of the arrow.

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. They may spill if the vehicle moves – there is a risk of scalding.
- Do not use any cups or beakers made of fragile material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Slide in the cup holder before raising the rear armrest.

Cigarette lighter

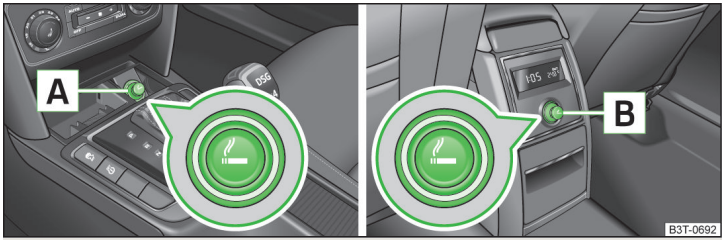


Fig. 85 **Centre console: Cigarette lighter, front/rear**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Operation

› Press the button of the cigarette lighter A or B » Fig. 85.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the lighter and burn themselves.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 92, *12 Volt power outlet*.

Ashtray

Fig. 86 **Centre console: Ashtray at the front/rear**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› Open the ashtray » Fig. 82 *on page 90*.
› Grasp the ashtray insert in the area A » Fig. 86 and remove it in the direction of the arrow 1.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

› Open the ashtray » Fig. 95 *on page 95*.
› Grasp the ashtray insert B » Fig. 86 in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Note

The ashtrays are fitted with an interior light which illuminates when the parking light is on.

12 Volt power outlet

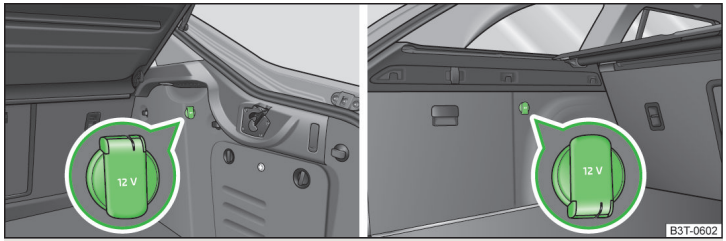


Fig. 87 **Boot: Superb / Superb Combi socket**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The 12-volt power socket (hereinafter referred to only as a socket) is located in the front center console A » Fig. 85 *on page 91* in the rear center console B » Fig. 85 *on page 91* and in the luggage compartment » Fig. 87.

Use

› Remove the cover from power socket or cigarette lighter » Fig. 85 *on page 91*or open the cover for the power socket » Fig. 87.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Storage compartment under the front armrest

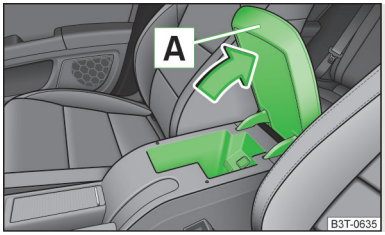


Fig. 88
Armrest: Stowage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.

Closing

› Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.

The sockets marked AUX AUX input and the MDI input are located in the storage compartment.

Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking light is on.

Storage net in front centre console

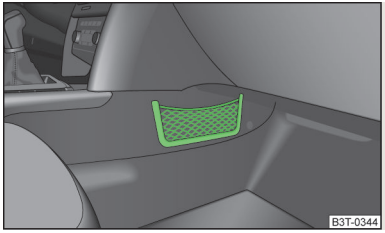


Fig. 89
Front centre console: Storage net

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 0.5 kg in the storage net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Glasses storage box

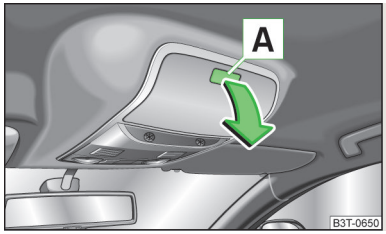


Fig. 90
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Press the button A » Fig. 90.

The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90 until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they could get damaged.
- The compartment must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

Storage compartment on passenger side

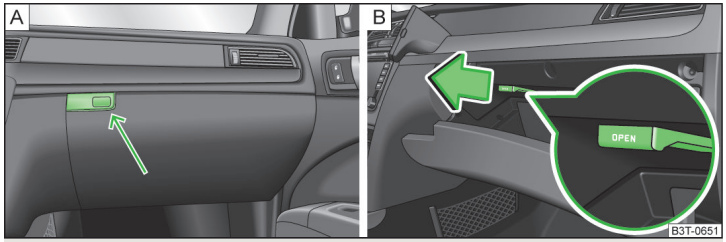


Fig. 91 **Open tray / control air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 91 - A.

The flap folds down.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply

› Open the air supply by pulling the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 91 - B.

› The air supply is closed by pressing the lever in the opposite direction to that of the arrow.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

When the storage compartment is opened, a light illuminates.

Storage compartment under passenger seat

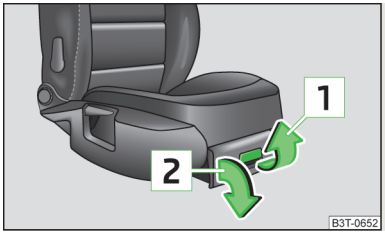


Fig. 92
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 92 in the direction of the arrow.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow 2 » Fig. 92.

› Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

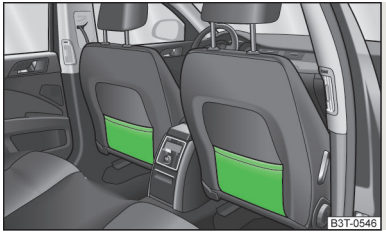


Fig. 93
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Pockets for storing maps, magazines etc. are provided on the back of the front seat backrests » Fig. 93.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury.

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment for umbrella

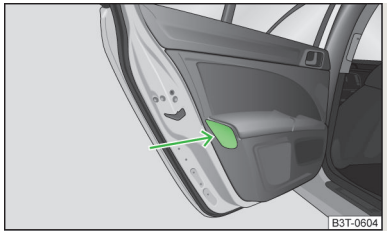


Fig. 94
Left rear door: Stowage compartment for an umbrella

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The storage compartment for an umbrella is located in the rear left door » Fig. 94.

Note

An umbrella can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Storage compartment in rear centre console

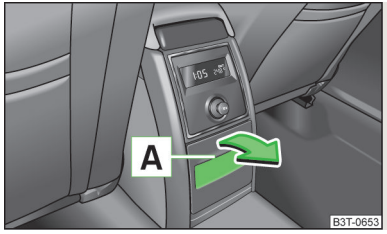


Fig. 95
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

› Pull the handle A » Fig. 95 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the rear armrest

Fig. 96
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Lift button A on the front of the armrest and lift the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96.

Closing

› Fold back the storage compartment lid in the opposite direction to that of the arrow » Fig. 96 until it clicks.

Rear seat backrest with long cargo channel

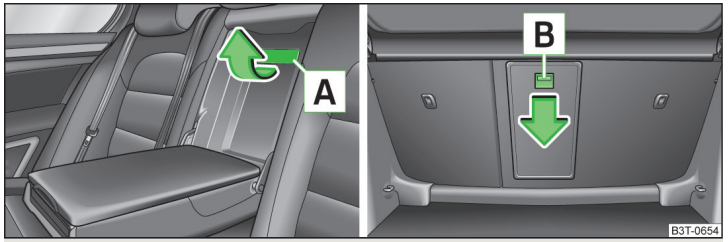


Fig. 97 **Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

› Fold down the rear armrest » Fig. 76 *on page 87*.

› Pull the handle A pull up to the stop in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover down » Fig. 97.

Opening from the boot

› Push the unlock button B » Fig. 97 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

› Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button B » Fig. 97 is not visible from the boot.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 97.

Removable ski bag

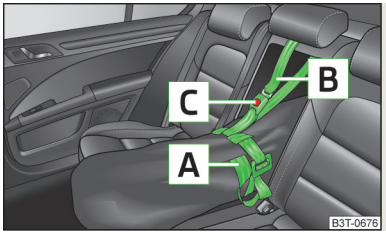


Fig. 98
Securing the through-loading bag

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to only as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Loading

› Open the boot lid.
› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 96, *Rear seat backrest with long cargo channel*.
› Place the empty, through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

› Tighten the strap A on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings» Fig. 98.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

On vehicles fitted with a luggage net partition, guide the securing strap B around the housing when the net partition is rolled up. After fixing the through-loading bag in place, it is not longer possible to unroll the net partition.

! WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap B » Fig. 98.
- The strap A must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap A holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

i Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.

› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » page 99.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light
The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Boot light for Superb Combi vehicles » page 103.

WARNING

- Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – there is a risk of death.
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 11.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

- It is important to ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater, the threads of the integrated antenna in the rear window as well as the threads of the integrated antenna (Superb Combi) in the rear side windows, are not damaged by abrasive items.
- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 198.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

The proper functioning of the electrical system is essential for the safe operation of the vehicle. It is important to ensure that it is not damaged during modifications or when loading or unloading the luggage compartment.

Fastening elements

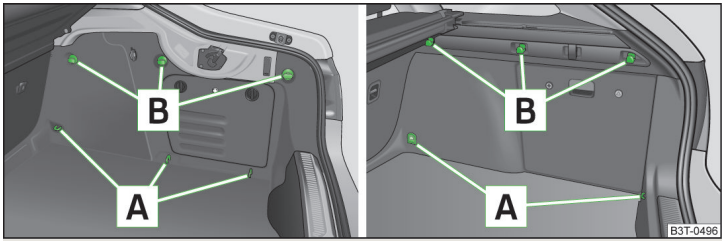


Fig. 99 **Lashing eyes and fastening elements: Superb / Superb Combi**

Read and observe and on page 98 first.

The following fastening elements are found in the luggage compartment » Fig. 99.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
B Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

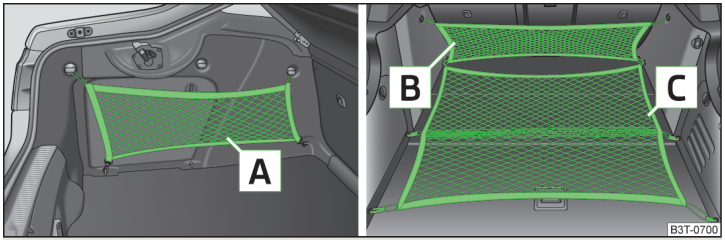


Fig. 100 **Fastening examples for nets**

Read and observe and on page 98 first.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets » Fig. 100.

A Vertical pocket
B Horizontal pocket
C Floor net

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Folding hook

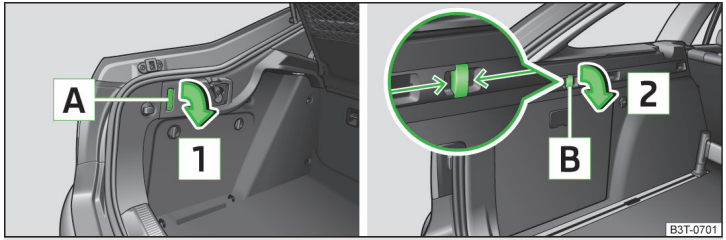


Fig. 101 **Folding hooks: Superb / Superb Combi**

Read and observe and on page 98 first.

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot.

Folding forward

› Superb: Press on the lower portion of the hook A and fold down direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 101.
› Superb Combi: Take hold of hook B in the area of the arrow and fold down in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 101.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible hook load is 7.5 kg.

Floor covering

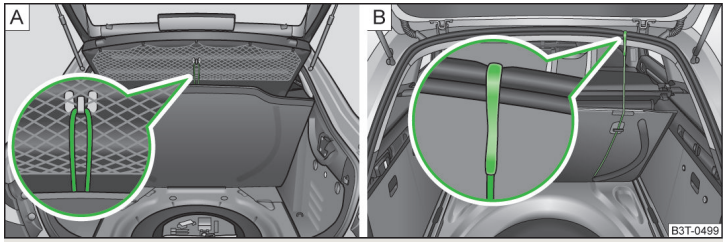


Fig. 102 **Fixing the floor covering: Superb / Superb Combi**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):
› Superb: With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 102 – A.
› Superb combi: With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid » Fig. 102 - B.

Luggage net

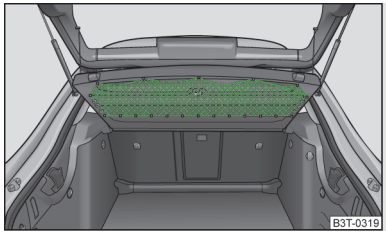


Fig. 103
Luggage net

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

! WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

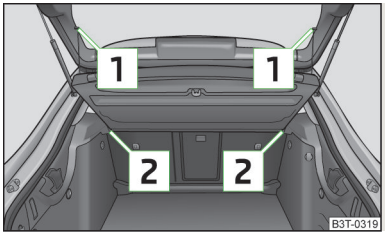


Fig. 104
Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Removing
› Hook the support straps 1 » Fig. 104 onto the boot lid.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Pull the cover out of the holders 2 horizontally towards the rear.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest.

Fitting
› Push the boot cover into the brackets 2 » Fig. 104.
› Hook the support straps 1 on the boot lid.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

i Note

If the retaining strips 1 are attached to the boot lid, the boot cover will rise when you open the boot lid.

Roll up boot cover (Superb Combi)

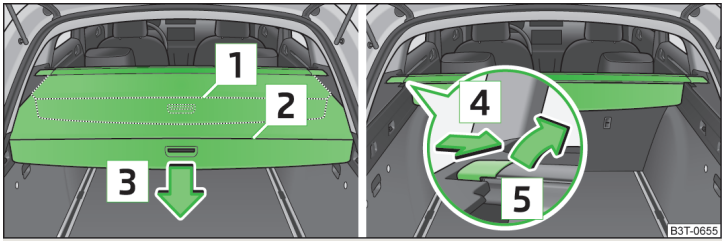


Fig. 105 **Roll up cargo cover: take out then pull out or roll up**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Extending

› Pull the foldable boot cover as far as the stop into the secured position 2 » Fig. 105.

Retracting

› Press the cover in the handle area in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 105, and the cover automatically rolls up into position 1.

Press in the grip area again and the cover will roll up.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

› Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 105 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 5.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Automatic Retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover enables an easier entry into the boot.

› Open the boot lid.

The foldable boot cover rolls up automatically in the position 1 to » Fig. 105 *on page 101*.

› Push the cover in the area of the handle in the direction of the arrow 3.

The cover retracts completely.

When the boot lid is opened quickly, the automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover is blocked for a delay time of approx. 2 seconds.

The function to automatically roll up the foldable boot cover can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu:

- **Settings**
  - **Autom. blind**

Side pockets in luggage compartment

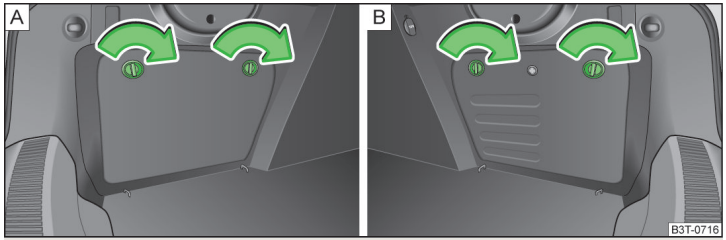


Fig. 106 **Superb boot: Open side compartment left / right**

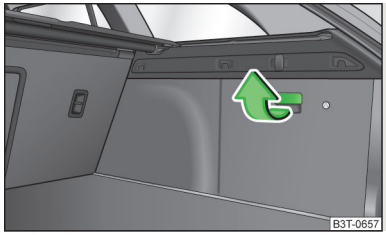


Fig. 107
Superb Combi boot: Open right compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Open / close compartment (Superb)
› Turn the bolts in direction of arrow » Fig. 106.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

The CD changer and TV tuner are located in the right compartment » Fig. 106 B.

The first-aid box can also be stored in this compartment.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)
› Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 107.
› Open the compartment cover downwards.
› When closing keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

The CD changer and TV Tuner are housed in this compartment.

The first-aid box and warning triangle can also be stored in this compartment.

Side compartment in boot with battery

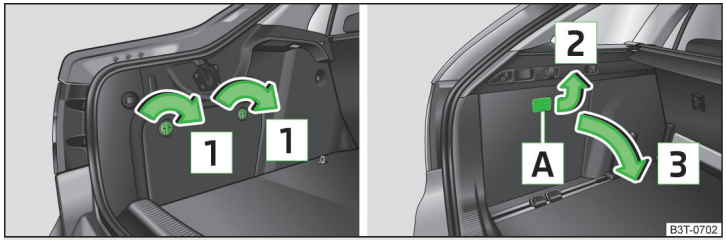


Fig. 108 **Open compartment with battery: Superb / Superb Combi**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

On some vehicles the battery is located in the left compartment » page 193.

Open / close compartment (Superb)
› Unfasten the bolts e.g. with a coin or screwdriver in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 108.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)
› For example, insert a coin in the slot A and lift them in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 108.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow 3.

› Close compartment (opposite to arrow direction) 3 until you hear it click.

Note
The side compartment where the battery is located is labelled in the Superb Combi vehicles with the symbol .

Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi)

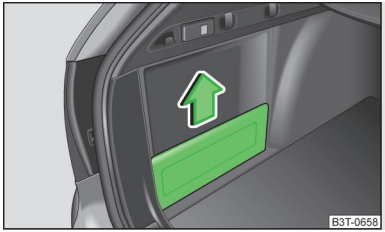


Fig. 109
Removing non-lockable side compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Increasing the size of the boot
› Remove the cover of the stowage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 109.

CAUTION
When handling the side compartment, ensure that the cover and the cover mountings are not damaged.

Removable light (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

A removable lamp is fitted on the left side of the boot. This lamp has two functions.

› Lighting the luggage compartment - part B » Fig. 110 *on page 103* illuminated (lamp in holder).
› Portable lamp - part C illuminated (lamp removed from the holder).

If the lamp is in the holder, it is automatically switched on when the boot lid is opened and switched off again when the boot lid is closed.

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type AAA batteries. The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Therefore it is possible to attach the lamp, for example on the vehicle body, after removing it.

CAUTION

The removable lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

Note

- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, it does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- If the lamp is not switched off and it is correctly inserted in the holder, the bulbs in the front part C » Fig. 110 *on page 103* of the lamp are automatically switched off.

Use light

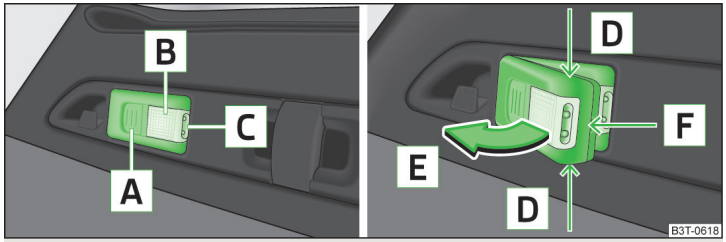


Fig. 110 **Use light / remove light**

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

Use light

› If you press button A » Fig. 110 once, the lamp illuminates with 100 % light intensity.
› If you press button A again, the lamp illuminates with 50 % light intensity.
› Press A button once again - the light goes out.

Remove the lamp from the holder

› Grasp the lamp in the areas of the arrows D » Fig. 110 and swivel it in the direction of the arrow E.

Reinserting the lamp the holder

› First of all place the deactivated lamp in the holder on the side facing the boot lid and then press on the lamp from the other side until it is clicks into place.

Changing rechargeable light batteries

Read and observe ! on page 103 first.

Proceed as follows if you wish to replace the faulty rechargeable batteries yourself:

› Remove the lamp.
› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the location of the lock-off clips F » Fig. 110 *on page 103*.
› Remove the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
› Insert the new rechargeable batteries.

› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner. If the lamp is not correctly opened, it can be damaged.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.
- The replacement rechargeable batteries must have the same specification as the original rechargeable batteries. If other types of rechargeable batteries are used, the power output can be reduced or it can lead to a malfunction of the lamp.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used rechargeable batteries in accordance with national legal provisions.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Dividing the luggage compartment

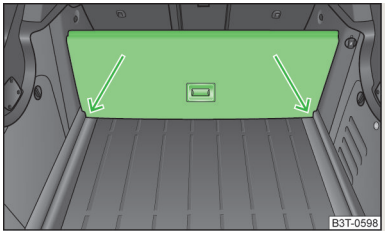


Fig. 111
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

Read and observe ! on page 104 first.

› Lift up the part with the mounting and secure it by sliding it into the grooves marked with the arrows » Fig. 111.

Remove variable loading floor

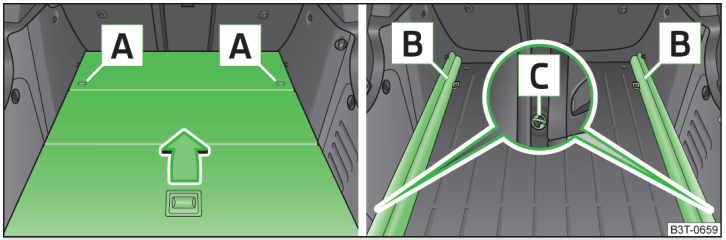


Fig. 112 **Boot: Remove variable loading floor/remove carrier rails**

Read and observe ! on page 104 first.

› Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the safety eyes A » Fig. 112 to the left by around 90°.
› Fold up and remove the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Unlock the carrier rails B by turning the arbour-mounted fixing eyes C to the right by approx. 90°.

WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when installing the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Extending variable loading floor with integrated aluminium rails and fastening elements (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example the fastening elements, removed foldable boot cover, etc.

Partial extension of variable load floor

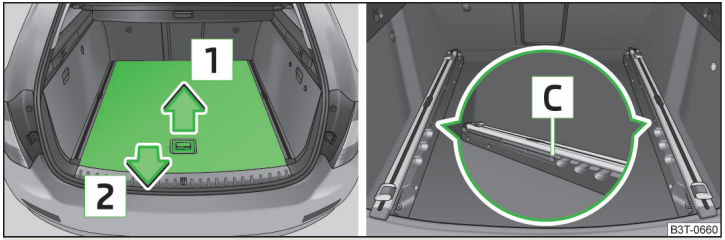


Fig. 113 **Luggage compartment: partially pulling out the variable loading floor**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The variable loading floor can be partially pulled out over the rear bumper.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift gently in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 113.
› Extend the variable load floor over the bumper in the direction of the arrow 2 until it engages in the opening C .

The variable loading floor which is pulled out in such a way is solely used as a seat, for example for changing shoes.

› To push in the rear section of the variable loading floor, grasp by the handle and lift slightly in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the variable loading floor against the arrow 2 to the stop.

When pulling out the variable loading floor, the front edge (close to the rear seats) is lifted at the same time. Thus, small objects can no longer fall into the space between the boot floor and the variable loading floor.

CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Divide boot

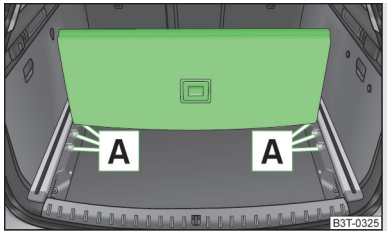


Fig. 114
Dividing the boot

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The boot can be divided with the variable loading floor.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 113 *on page 105*.
› Insert the trailing edge in one of the openings A » Fig. 114.

The variable loading floor is secured in the openings A against movement.

The variable loading floor can be pulled out a little more before dividing the boot with the variable loading floor » page 105. This enlarges the space between the rear seats and the separation.

CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Fit and remove variable loading floor

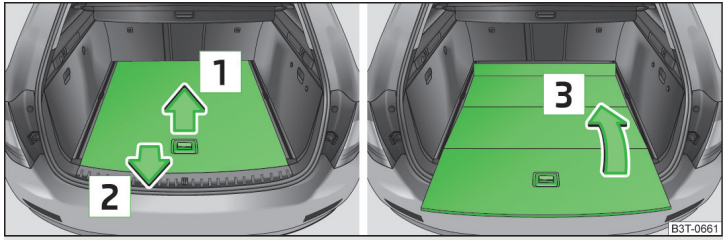


Fig. 115 **Luggage compartment: fold up variable loading floor**

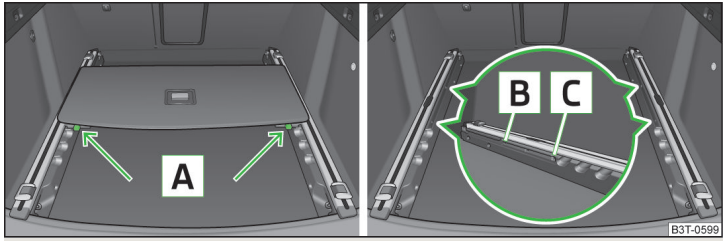


Fig. 116 **Luggage compartment: variable loading floor**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The variable loading floor can be removed and reinstalled, if necessary.

Removing

› Grasp the rear part of the floor by the handle, raise it slightly in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 115 and pull it out over the bumper in the direction of the arrow 2 until it engages in the opening C » Fig. 116.

› Fold up the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 115.

› Press the safety buttons A » Fig. 116 and remove the floor.

Fitting

› Fold up the floor and place it on the carrier rails.

› Push the floor forwards until it engages in the openings B in the carrier rails » Fig. 116.

› Carefully press in the vicinity of the openings C on the floor until it clicks into place, if necessary press the safety buttons A.

WARNING

Ensure the variable loading floor is attached correctly during installation. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Fixing set

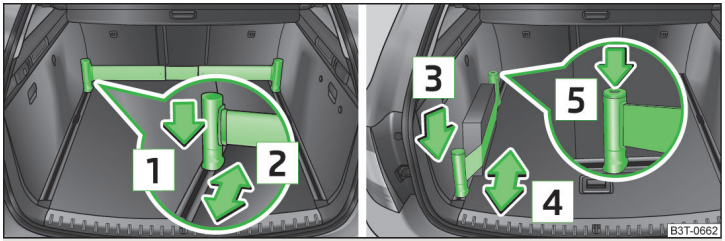


Fig. 117 **Telescopic pole and tensioning strap**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The fixing set can be used for dividing the boot or for securing the objects which are being transported.

Telescopic pole

› Insert the holders for the telescopic pole into the left and right openings of the carrier rails.

› Press the top part of the holder in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 117 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2.

› Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.

Tensioning strap

› Insert the tensioning strap holders into the opening on the left or right carrier rail.
› Press the holder in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 117 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow 4.
› Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.
› Place the object that is to be secured behind the tensioning strap.
› Press the button 5 on the top side of the holder and tighten the strap.

WARNING

The objects in the boot must be firmly secured with the fixing set so that they cannot move freely and uncontrollably and to prevent damage to objects or injuries to occupants.

Note

- Do not use the fixing set to secure objects that might damage the fixing set.
- The tensioning strap can also be fully reeled up by pressing the button 5 » Fig. 117.

Movable lashing eyes

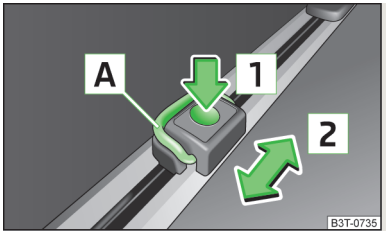


Fig. 118
Move lashing eyelets

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

There are four moveable lashing eyelets in the boot that can, for example, be used to attach the fixing nets.

› Press the button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 118 and move the lashing eyelets to the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fold up the clamp the lashing eyelets A and, for example, attach the fixing net.

Net partition (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.
- Make sure that the transverse rod is inserted into the mounts C » Fig. 119 *on page 107* or » Fig. 120 *on page 108* in the forward position.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

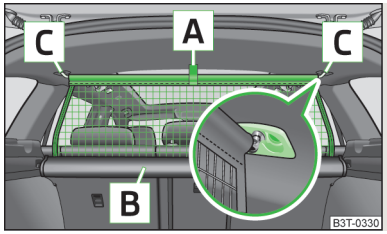


Fig. 119
Net partition behind the rear seats in the pulled out state

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Extending

› Pull the net partition by the tab A » Fig. 119 in the direction of the fasteners C.
› Insert the transverse rod into one of the mounts C and push forwards.
› Insert the transverse rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.

Retracting

› Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts C » Fig. 119.
› Hold the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing B without being damaged.

Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 101.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

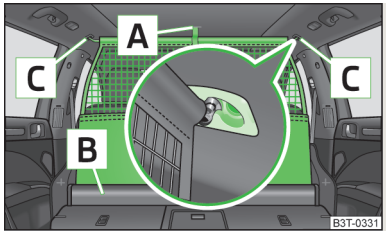


Fig. 120
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled out state

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Extending

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 87.
› Pull the net partition by the tab A » Fig. 120.
› First of all insert the cross rod into the mount C on one side and push it forward.
› Insert the transverse rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.

Retracting

› Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts C » Fig. 120.
› **Hold** the transverse rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing B without being damaged.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 87.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

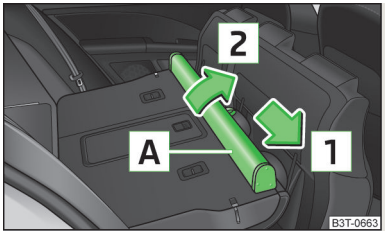


Fig. 121
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Removing

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 87.
› Open the rear right door.
› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 121.

Fitting

› Insert the recesses on the housing A » Fig. 121 into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
› Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 87.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.

WARNING (Continued)

- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- The fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed when handling roof racks.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof or a panoramic sliding roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof or the panoramic sliding roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in higher fuel consumption.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Superb Combi.

Fig. 122 **Attachment points for roof bars**

Read and observe and on page 108 first.

Installation position of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 122:

A Forward attachment point

B Rear attachment point

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe and on page 108 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Air conditioning system

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air conditioning system » page 114 or for Climatronic » page 117.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak.

Note

- The exhaust air streams out through vents at the rear of the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

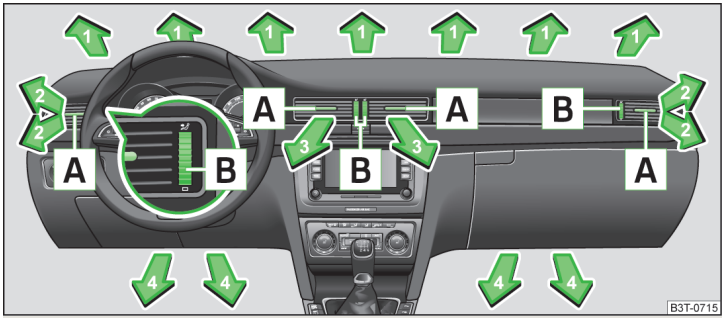


Fig. 123 **Air vents at the front**

Fig. 124 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

Unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of control dial and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **2**, **3** » Fig. 123 and **5** » Fig. 124 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Set the air flow direction

› To adjust the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal vanes up or down with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 123 » Fig. 124.
› To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 123 or » Fig. 124 to the left or right.

Setting the amount of airflow

› Turn the knob B » Fig. 123 and » Fig. 124 to position to fully open the air outlet.
› Turn the knob B » Fig. 123 and » Fig. 124 to position **0** to close the air outlet.

The knob can be adjusted to any position in-between.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
/	1, 2
	1, 2, 4, 6
/	2, 3, 5
	4, 6

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Using the air conditioning system economically

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will affect the fuel consumption.

It is recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 149, *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 220.

› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 31.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 112.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

! CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Note

▪ We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
▪ During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Control elements

Fig. 125 **The air conditioning system: Control elements**

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 125**:**

A Set the temperature (turn to the left: to reduce the temperature, turn to the right: to increase the temperature)
B Set the blower level (level 0: blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)
C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 110
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 75
Aux. heating on/off » page 118
Switch recirculation on/off » page 114
Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 85
Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 85

Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** illuminates after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » page 112. The operational readiness of the cooling system is indicated by the warning light in the button illuminating.

adjusting

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Settings	Control dial settings » Fig. 125 *on page 112*			Button » Fig. 125 *on page 112*		Air outlet vents 2 » Fig. 123 *on page 110*
	A	B	C	A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a)]	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Automatically switched on	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the stop to the right	3		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the stop to the left	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Activated	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Activated	Do not switch on	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the stop to the left	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

a) We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 123 *on page 110* in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the button.

The warning light in the button illuminates.

› Press the button again.

The warning light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 125 *on page 112* is turned to the position.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by pressing the button again.

! WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best possible setting for the temperature of the air flowing out, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 112.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Aeration of the vehicle when ignition is switched off
On models fitted with power sliding/tilting roof with solar cells, the fresh air blower is automatically switched over to "solar mode" if the sun rays are sufficient after switching off the ignition. The solar cells on the sliding/tilting roof deliver power for the fresh air blower. This supplies the interior of the car with fresh air.

For an optimum ventilation, the air outlet vents **2** and **3** must be opened » Fig. 123 *on page 110*.

The ventilation functions only when the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.

Note

- We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- On vehicles equipped with a factory fitted radio or radio navigation system, the Climatronic information is also shown on their displays. This function can be switched off, see » *operating instructions for the radio or navigation system*.

Control elements

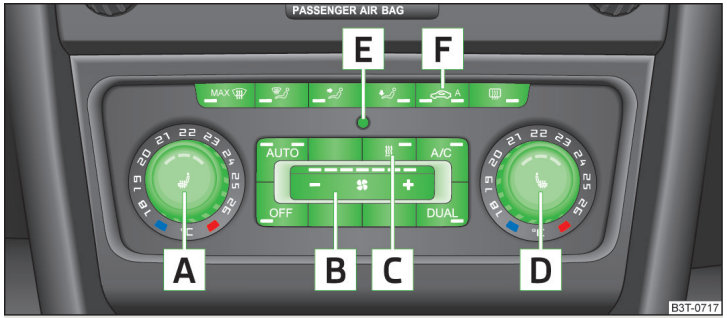


Fig. 126 **Climatronic: Control elements**

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 126**:**

A Adjust the temperature for the left side » page 116
B Adjust the blower speed » page 118
C depending on equipment:
› Aux. heating on/off » page 119
› Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 75
D Adjust the temperature for the right side » page 116
E Interior temperature sensor
F depending on equipment:
› Recirculation mode **with** air quality sensor on/off » page 117, *Recirculation mode - Version 1*
› Recirculation mode **without** air quality sensor on/off » page 117, *Recirculation mode - Version 2*

MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off
Air flow to the windows
Air flow to the upper body
Air flow in the footwell
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 75
Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 85
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 116
OFF Switching Climatronic system off
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off » page 116
DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » page 116
Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 85

Note

Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor E, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year

› Set the required temperature between +18 °C and +26 °C: we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the button **AUTO** » Fig. 126 *on page 115*.
› Set the air outlet vents **2** and **3** » Fig. 123 *on page 110* so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After pressing, a warning light in the top right or left corner of the button **AUTO** illuminates, depending on which mode was last selected.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** illuminates, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode.

The "HIGH" mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

Upon pressing the **AUTO** button again, the Climatronic switches to "LOW"-mode and the warning light in the top left corner illuminates. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing any of the air distribution buttons or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off

› Press the button **A/C**.

The warning light in the button illuminates.

› Press button **A/C** once more.

The warning light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation and heating function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting the temperature

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 126 *on page 115* to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the button **DUAL** does not illuminate.

For the right side

› Turn the control dial D » Fig. 126 *on page 115* to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the button **DUAL** illuminates.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL**is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial A. This function can be restored by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The warning light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +18 °C is selected, a blue symbol illuminates at the start of the numerical scale.

If a temperature higher than +26 °C is selected, a red symbol illuminates at the start of the numerical scale.

At both end positions, Climatronic functions at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is not regulated.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculation mode - Version 1

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the **air quality sensor**, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

Switching recirculated air mode on

› Repeatedly press the button until the warning light on the **left** side of the button is illuminated.

Switch on automatic air distribution control

› Repeatedly press the button until the warning light on the **right-hand** side of the button illuminates.

Switch off automatic air distribution control temporarily

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch in on manually.

› Press the button.

The warning light illuminates in the button on the left side.

Switching recirculated air mode off

› Press the button AUTO or press the symbol button again until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the AUTO button once the windscreen has demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Recirculation mode - Version 2

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

The air recirculation mode is automatically activated after the ignition is switched if it was on before the ignition was turned off. The warning light in the button illuminates.

Switch off / on

› Press the button.

The warning light in the button goes out.

› Press the button again.

The warning light in the button illuminates.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the **AUTO** button once the windscreen has demisted.

Controlling blower

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature.

However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

› Repeatedly pressing the symbol button on the left or right reduces or increases blower speed.

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the symbol button when the respective number of warning lights illuminate.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

Switching on

› Press the MAX button » Fig. 126 *on page 115*.
› Press the button » Fig. 126 *on page 115*.

Switching off

› Press the symbol button MAX again or press the symbol button **AUTO**.
› Press the button again.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** » Fig. 123 *on page 110*. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Additional heating (hereinafter only as a aux. heating)

The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The aux. heating functions in connection with the air conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine. This is not valid for vehicles with the 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This warms the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

Depending on the environmental conditions, the **automatic** on or off of the heater occurs, which causes the best possible conditions for the engine running and the interior heating.

For vehicles with petrol engines, the automatic switching on and off of the heater can be disabled at a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, then the car should not be parked in places where the exhaust gases can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or similar - Risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heater consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating switches on the blower B » Fig. 125 *on page 112* or » Fig. 126 *on page 115* only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on/off

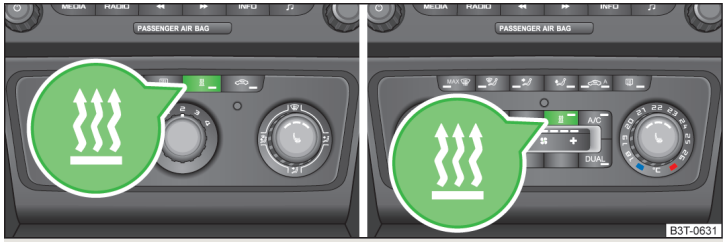


Fig. 127 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

The auxiliary heating can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button illuminates » Fig. 127.

ON by using the radio remote control » page 120.

Manually switching off

using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button goes out » Fig. 127,

OFF by using the radio remote control » page 120.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump still runs for a short period.

Automatic switching on/off

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the information display » page 47 (depending on the vehicle equipment):

- **Day of the week** - set the current day of the week;
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode;

- **Starting time 1**, **Starting time 2**, **Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode;
- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode;
- **Factory settings** - Restore factory settings
- **Back** - Return to main menu

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating activates automatically at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the menu item **Back** is selected or no changes are made on the display for longer than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

The system switches itself off at the end of the running time set under the menu item **Running time**.

Note

A warning light on the button » Fig. 127 illuminates when the system is running.

Radio remote control

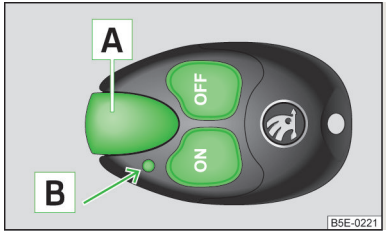


Fig. 128
Auxiliary heater: Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 128

A Aerial
B Warning light
ON Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery in the remote control can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial A pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light B » Fig. 128	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.

Display warning light B » Fig. 128	Meaning
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 216.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Communication and multimedia

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please ask at a specialist workshop about installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems that have a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

This could be for the following reasons.
› no external aerial.
› external aerial incorrectly installed.
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area where it can become a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- Before transport of the vehicle by air, the Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company.

Universal telephone preinstallation (hands-free)

The universal telephone preinstallation (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel and the radio or navigation system.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the device in such a way that you are in full control of your vehicle in every traffic situation – there is the risk of accidents!
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

Note

- We recommend that mobile phones and two-way radio systems be installed in the vehicle by a specialist workshop.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II or GSM III. Ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your phone is compatible with the universal telephone preparation GSM II or GSM III.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

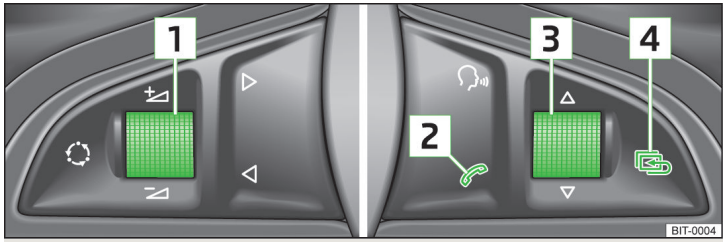


Fig. 129 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

There are buttons in the steering wheel for easy operation of the basic functions of the phone » Fig. 129 so that the driver is distracted from the traffic as little as possible when using the phone.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone installation at the factory.

The buttons control the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/ wheel » Fig. 129	Action	Function
1	Press briefly	(MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic Phone menu → Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press button for a long period of time	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press button for a long period of time	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to previous level in the menu
4	Press button for a long period of time	Exit telephone menu

Symbols in the MAXI DOT display

Symbol	Meaning	Valid for
	Charge status of the telephone battery[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	Signal strength[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III
3G	A UMTS network is available	GSM III
	Internet connection via the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile

[a)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Phone Phonebook

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the telephone's first connection to the hands-free system, the phone book from the phone and the SIM card loads into the hands-free memory.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this period, the available phone book is the one stored at the previous update. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

GSM II
The internal phonebook provides 2,500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1,200 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the number of loaded contacts exceeds 2,500, the phone book is not complete.

GSM III
The internal phonebook provides 2000 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 5 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1000 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the mobile phone's telephone book has more than 2,000 contacts, the following message will appear in the MAXI DOTdisplay:

Phone book not fully loaded

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
- Phone Phonebook » page 124.
- Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 122.
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 122.
- Voice control of the telephone » page 131.
- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 134.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Note
The following guidelines must be observed » page 121, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
- Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
- Confirm the PIN[1].

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.

› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› To finish pairing, confirm the creation of the new user profile in the MAXI DOT display.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system
If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be re-established for 3 minutes in the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› In the **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu in the MAXI DOT display.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth** - **Users** menu item in the MAXI DOT display.

Solving connection problems
If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**[3]
- **Call register**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**[3]
- **Settings**[4]
- **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

---

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.
[3] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.
[4] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled nos.** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls** - list of received calls

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones in reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Find** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update**[1] - Update the phone book
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return to the telephone's basic menu.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM III comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 124.
› Convenience operation via the multifunction steering wheel » page 122.
› Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 128.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 131.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 134.
› Internet connection » page 129.
› Display of SMS messages » page 128.

All communication between a telephone and the hands-free system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the following profiles of Bluetooth® technology.

rSAP - Remote SIM access profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **rSAP** profile, the telephone deregisters from the GSM network, and communication with the network is only enabled by the hands-free system via the vehicle's external aerial. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only use the mobile phone to disconnect from the hands-free system, deactivate the Bluetooth® connection or dial the emergency number 112 (only valid in some countries).

HFP - Hands Free Profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **HFP** profile, the telephone continues to use its GSM module and the internal antenna to communicate with the GSM network.

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 121, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, it is necessary to interconnect the telephone and hands-free system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone. For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the **rSAP** function.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN code for the SIM card in your phone. The telephone connects to the hands-free system (during the first connection you can only enter the PIN code in the MAXI DOT display when the vehicle is stationary, as this is the only situation when you can choose whether the PIN code should be stored).
› To save a new user, follow the instructions in the MAXI DOT display.
› Reconfirm the **rSAP** command on your mobile phone to download the telephone book and the identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HPP profile

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› Follow the instructions on the MAXI DOT display and the mobile phone to store a new user or to download the telephone book and identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

The telephone primarily connects via the **rSAP** profile.

If the PIN code was stored, the telephone is automatically detected and connected with the hands-free system the next time the ignition is switched on. Check your mobile phone to see whether this automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

› By removing the key from the ignition lock (the connection is disconnected during a telephone call).
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› Select the user by disconnecting the user in the MAXI DOT display in the **Bluetooth** - **User** menu option - **Disconnect**.

On vehicles which are fitted with a radio or navigation system at the factory, it is possible to terminate the telephone call after removing the key from the ignition lock by pressing the button on the touchscreen of the radio[2] or navigation system; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the radio or navigation system*.

Note

- In the memory of the hands-free system, up to three users can be stored, whereby the hands-free system can only communicate actively with one user. If a connection is established with a fourth mobile phone, one of the users must be deleted.
- When connecting to the hands-free system, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) will either be displayed, or a 16-digit code displayed in the MAXI DOTdisplay will need to be entered into your mobile phone and confirmed within 30 seconds by following the instructions on your mobile phone display.

[2] Does not apply for Radio Swing.

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

If no phone is connected to the hands-free system, the message **No paired phone found** appears along with the following menu items when the **Phone** menu is selected.

- **Help** - This menu item appears when no paired phone is stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **Connect** - This menu item appears when one or more paired phones are stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **New user** - New phone
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Find** - Device search
  - **Visibility** - Visibility on/off
- **SOS** - Emergency call

If a telephone is paired with the hands-free system, the following menu items can be selected in the **Phone** menu.

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

The following functions are available for each phone contact.

- Display telephone number
- **Voice tag** - Voice tag for the contact
  - **Play** - Play a voice tag
  - **Record** - Record a voice contact

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✻, #** and the **Delete**, **Call** and **Back** functions.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.

- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Received calls** - list of received calls
- **Dialled nos.** - List of dialled numbers
- **Delete lists** - Delete call registers

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set or save the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✻, #** and the **Delete**, **Call**, **Store** and **Back** functions.

Messages[1)]
A list of received text messages is displayed in the **Messages** menu item. After calling a message, the following functions appear.

- **Show** - Display text message
- **Read** - The system reads out the selected text message through the vehicle's speakers
- **Send time** - Display message send time
- **Call back** - Dial the phone number of the sender of the text message
- **Copy** - Copy the received text message to the SIM card of your mobile phone
- **Delete** - Delete the message

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.

- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
  - **Connect** - Connection with the telephone
  - **Disconnect** - Disconnection of telephone
  - **Rename** - Rename the telephone
  - **Delete** - Delete the telephone
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
    - **Connect** - Connection with the device
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Delete** - Delete the device
    - **Authorisation** - Authorise the device

[1)] Only applies when connecting the telephone to the hands-free system via the rSAP profile.

- **Search** - Search for available media players
- **Visibility** - Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for media players in the vicinity
- **Modem** - overview of the active and paired devices for the connection to the internet
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

WLAN
Wi-Fi menu item» page 131, *Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display*.

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Read in the phone book
  - **Select memory** - Select memory with phone contacts
    - **SIM & phone** - Download the contacts of the SIM card and the phone
    - **SIM card** - Download the contacts from the SIM card
    - **Phone** - Initial setting to also import contacts from the SIM card; it is necessary to switch to the **SIM & phone** menu item
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
- **Own number** - Optionally display your own telephone number on the display of the device of the person you are calling (this function is network-dependent)
  - **Network depnd.** - Network-dependent own number display
  - **Yes** - Allow display of your own number
  - **No** - Prohibit display of your own number
- **Signal settings** - Signal settings
  - **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting
  - **Volume** - Signal volume settings
    - **Turn vol. up** - Increase volume
    - **Turn vol. down** - Decrease volume
- **Phone settings** - Phone settings
  - **Select operator** - Select operator
    - **Automatic** - Automatic operator selection
    - **Manual** - Manual operator selection
  - **Network mode** - Network mode
    - **UMTS** - UMTS
    - **GSM** - GSM
    - **Automatic** - automatic
  - **SIM mode** - Applies to telephones with the rSAP profile that simultaneously support the operation of two SIM cards - there is an option to choose which SIM card to connect to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 1** - SIM 1 is connected to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 2** - SIM 2 is connected to the hands-free system
  - **Phone mode** - Toggle between rSAP and HFP mode
    - **Premium** - rSAP mode
    - **Hands-free** - HFP mode
  - **Off time** - Set the off time in increments of 5 min
- **Access point** - Set the Internet access point
  - **APN** - Change the access point name
  - **User name** - User Name
  - **Password** - Password
- **Switch off ph.** - Switch off the hands-free system (the mobile phone remains paired)

Back
Return to the main menu in the MAXI DOT display.

Internet connection via Bluetooth®

A notebook can, for example, be connected to the Internet via the hands-free system.

The control unit of the hands-free system supports the GPRS, EDGE and UMTS/3G technologies.

An Internet can only be established via a telephone which is connected via the rSAP profile.

The procedure for connecting to the Internet can vary depending on the type and version of the operating system as well as the type of the device to be connected. Successfully connecting to the internet requires appropriate knowledge of the operating system for connecting the device .

Sequence for connection
› Connect the mobile phone with the hands-free system.
› Set the access point in the **Phone** - **Settings** - **Access point** menu (depending on the operator, usually "Internet").

› Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu.
› Use the device that is to be connected to search for available Bluetooth® devices.
› Select the hands-free system (as standard "SKODA_BT") from the list of found devices.
› Enter the password on the device being connected and follow any instructions given on this device or in the MAXI DOTdisplay.
› Enter the desired Internet address in the Internet browser. The operating system requests the entry of the telephone number for the internet access (depending on the operator, usually "*99#").

Wi-Fi

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WLAN (also Wi-Fi) is a wireless network for connecting to the Internet.

Using a mobile phone connected with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile, it is possible to establish a Wi-Fi network in the vehicle and to enable passengers with compatible devices to connect to this network.

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off

Switching on
› Connect the mobile phone with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile » page 127.
› Select the **Wi-Fi** menu item in the **Phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch on Wi-Fi?*?

› Select the **Yes** menu item.

If no access point[1)] is assigned automatically, then this must be entered manually as per the instructions from the mobile network operator, e.g. "Internet".

If the Wi-Fi network is switched on, the display will show the following message, for example: **WLAN SK_WLAN 1234 switched on.**

The display then shows a password for the Wi-Fi network connection. The password can subsequently be found in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If no data connection via WLAN is available, the display will show the message **Data connection not available.**. This can be caused by a weak GSM signal, for example. Try to establish the connection again at a location with stronger signal reception.

Switching off
› Select the **Wi-Fi** - **Off** menu item in the **Phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch off Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **OK** menu item.

The display shows the message *Wi-Fi switch off.*

Connecting an external device to the WLAN network

Connecting using the Wi-Fi network search
› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 130, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› On the device to be connected, search for available WLAN networks (Wi-Fi) - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.
› Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network connection in the menu of the networks found (e.g. **Wi-Fi SK_WLAN 1234**).

If menu item **WPA2** is set in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, then the password displayed when the Wi-Fi is switched on must be entered in the device to be connected. The password can be found in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If menu item **Open** is set in the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, the connection is made automatically.

Connecting using WPS (service for easy connection)
› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 130, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› Open the **Phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **WPS config.** menu in the instrument cluster.
› In the device to be connected, select the connection using WPS function - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.

[1)] The name of the access point is defined by the mobile operator.

If the **Pushbutton** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, the Wi-Fi connection is made automatically.

If the **WPS PIN** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, then a PIN must be entered in the device to be connected and the instrument cluster.

Use WLAN network in MAXI DOT display

When a Wi-Fi network is switched on, the following menu items are displayed when the **Wi-Fi** menu item is selected:

- **Off** - Switch off the WLAN network (depending on the context)
- **Device list** - Display a list of external devices
  - **Active device** - Display a list of active devices
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Known devices** - Display a list of known devices
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Device blocked** - Display of a list of blocked devices
    - **Unblock** - Remove the connection block
  - **Delete lists** - Delete device lists
    - **Known devices** - Delete the list of known devices
    - **Device blocked** - Delete the list of blocked devices
    - **Both lists** - Delete both device lists
- **Password** - Use of password to log on to the WLAN network
  - **Show** - Display a password to log on to the WLAN network
  - **Generate** - Generate a new password to log on to the WLAN network
- **Wi-Fi Name** - Use of WLAN network name
  - **Show** - Display the WLAN network name
  - **Rename** - Rename the WLAN network
- **WPS config.** - Wi-Fi network connection using WPS
  - **Pushbutton** - Automatic connection
  - **WPS PIN** - PIN entry for the connection
- **Data counter** - Display information about the volume of data transferred
  - **Current Connection** - display of the volume of data transferred for the current connection
  - **Total** - Display of the total volume of data transferred
  - **Reset** - Resetting of the information about the volume of data transferred
- **Settings** - WLAN network settings
  - **Access point** - Access point settings
    - **Settings** - Access point management
      - **APN** - Change the access point name
      - **User name** - User Name
      - **Password** - Password
    - **Reset** - Reset access point factory settings
  - **Prioritisation** - Set the connection priority
    - **Calls** - Set the connection priority for calls
    - **Data** - Set the connection priority for data transfer
  - **Encryption**- Set the encryption
    - **WPA2** - Enable WPA 2 encryption
    - **Open** - No encryption
  - **Visibility** - Set the WLAN network visibility
    - **Visible** - WLAN network is visible to other devices
    - **Invisible** - WLAN network is not visible to other devices
  - **Data roaming** - Set the data roaming
    - **No roaming** - Data roaming is not allowed
    - **Allow** - Data roaming is allowed
    - **Always ask** - Question setting for data roaming
  - **Wi-Fi Channel** - Select WLAN network channels (preferably set to channel 11)
    - **Channel 1** ... **Channel 11** - Display the WLAN network channels
  - **Reset** - Reset Wi-Fi network factory settings

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue

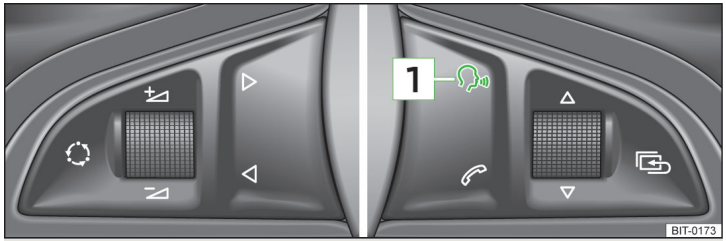


Fig. 130 **Multifunction steering wheel**

The voice control system (hereinafter referred to as the system) makes it possible to use voice commands for some functions of the hands-free system.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
› Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
› Avoid a bad pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
› It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
› During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Activating voice control - GSM II
Briefly press button 1 » Fig. 130 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Deactivating voice control - GSM II
If the system is currently playing a message, you will need to end the message currently being played by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multi function steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.
› With the **CANCEL** voice command.
› Briefly press button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Activating voice control - GSM III
The dialogue can be started at any time by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 130 on the multifunction steering wheel[1)].

Deactivating voice control - GSM III
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 130 on the multi function steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.
› With the **CANCEL** voice command.
› Briefly press button 1 » Fig. 130 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note
▪ The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
▪ The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control.
▪ On vehicles that are factory fitted with the Columbus navigation system, it is only possible to operate the voice control for the telephone via this device» *Operating instructions for the Columbus navigation system*, chapter *Voice control for the navigation system*.

[1)] Not valid for vehicles with the Columbus navigation system.

Voice commands - GSM II

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL REGISTER	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Pardon?**", and a new entry can be made. After the 2nd unsuccessful attempt, the system repeats the help. After the 3rd unsuccessful attempt the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Voice commands - GSM III

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL NAME	After this command, a name can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	The last selected telephone number is selected.
READ ADDRESS BOOK	The system reads out contacts from the telephone book.
READ MESSAGES	The system reads the messages which were received while the telephone was connected to the control unit.
SHORT DIALOGUE	The help is significantly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).
LONG DIALOGUE	The help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If the system does not recognise the command, it repeats the first part of the help thus enabling a new entry to be completed. After the 2nd unsuccessful attempt the system repeats the second part of the help. After the 3rd unsuccessful attempt the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone preinstallation makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from devices such as MP3 players, mobile phones or notebooks.

To ensure the music can be played back via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 133, *Voice commands - GSM II*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

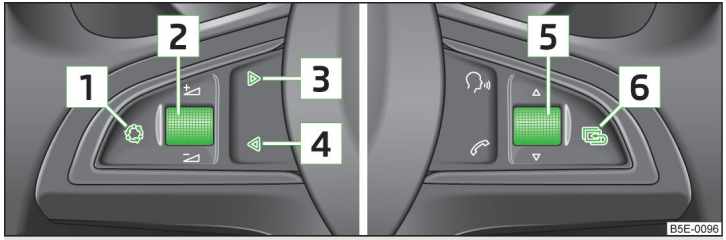


Fig. 131 **Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons**

The multifunction steering wheel has buttons for operating the basic functions of factory fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 131.

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/ wheel » Fig. 131	Action	Radio	TV	Audio sources	DVD video	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source				
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE)				Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase volume				

Button/ wheel » Fig. 131	Action	Radio	TV	Audio sources	DVD video	Navigation
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume				
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	without function
		Stop traffic report				
3	Press button for a long period of time	without function		Fast forward		without function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a)]	Switch to previous chapter	without function
		Stop traffic report				
4	Press button for a long period of time	without function		Fast rewind		without function
5	Turn upwards	Switch to the previous station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
5	Turn downwards	Switch to the next station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a)]	Switch to previous chapter	
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu				

a) To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX- and MDIinputs

The AUX and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or mp3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory fitted radio or navigation system.

The AUX input for external audio sources is located below the armrest of the front seats and is marked with the symbol **AUX**[1)] .

The MDI input is located in the storage compartment below the front armrest.

For a description of use, refer to the relevant operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

1) For vehicles with the navigation system Amundsen + the AUX input located on the front panel of the navigation device » *manual of the navigation system Amundsen +*.

CD changer

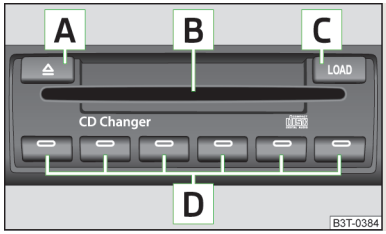


Fig. 132
The CD changer

The CD changer for the radio and navigation system is located in the right side compartment of the boot.

Inserting the CD

› Touch the button C » Fig. 132 and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD case B.

The CD is automatically loaded onto the lowest free position in the CD changer. The warning light in the corresponding button D stops flashing.

Filling the CD changer with CDs

› Press and hold the button C » Fig. 132 for longer than 2 seconds and guide the CDs one after the other (maximum 6 CDs) into the CD case B.

The warning lights in the buttons D stop flashing.

Inserting a CD at a specific position

› Press the button C » Fig. 132.

The warning lights in the buttons D illuminate the memory spaces that are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.

› Touch the desired button D and guide the CD into the CD case B.

Ejecting a CD

› Press the button A » Fig. 132 to eject a CD.

For assigned memory spaces, the warning lights now illuminates in the buttons D.

› Press the corresponding button D. The CD is ejected.

Ejecting all CDs

› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 132 for more than 2 seconds to eject the CDs.

All CDs in the CD changer are ejected consecutively.

Note

- Insert a CD, with the labelled side facing up, into the CD slot B » Fig. 132 until it is automatically drawn in. The play function will start automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD changer, wait until the warning light of the corresponding button D is illuminated. Then the CD case B is free to load the next CD.
- If a position is selected, on which a CD is already located, this CD is ejected. Remove the ejected CD and load the desired CD.

DVD-preinstallation

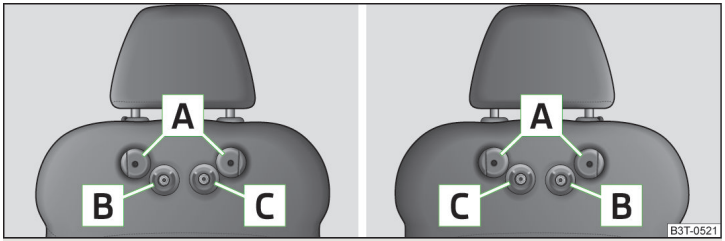


Fig. 133 **Seat backrest - left front seat/right front seat**

DVD preinstallation » Fig. 133

A Openings for attachment of DVD player holder
B Audio/video input
C Connection input, DVD player

Only one DVD preinstallation is factory-installed in the seat backrest of the front seat.

The DVD player holder and DVD player can be purchased from ŠKODA original accessories. For a description of the use, refer to the operating instructions for these devices and equipment.

WARNING

- If there are passengers on the rear seats, the DVD player holder must not be used on its own (without the DVD player) - risk of injury!
- The inclination of the holder can be adjusted to three pre-set positions. Be careful not to injure fingers between the holder and the backrest when changes to the position of the DVD player holder are made.
- The DVD player holder must not be used when the rear seat backrest or the rear seat is folded forward or has been removed completely.

Note

Follow the instructions given in the operating instructions of the DVD player holder/DVD player.

Driving

Starting off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » page 140.

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

WARNING

- When the vehicle is travelling with the engine off, the ignition key must always be in position 2 » Fig. 134 *on page 139* (ignition switched on). This position is confirmed by the appearance of certain indicator lamps in the instrument cluster.
  - If the key is not in position 2, it could unexpectedly lock the steering - danger of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The engine's exhaust gases also contain the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide, a poisonous gas – risk of death.
  - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running 3 » Fig. 134 *on page 139*.
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 211, *Jump-starting*.

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Immobilizer active.**
S **IMMOBILIZER**

Ignition Switch

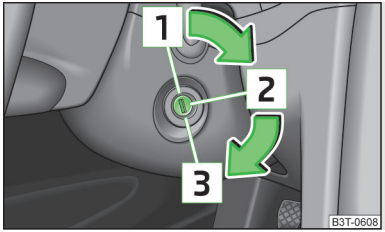


Fig. 134
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Petrol engines » Fig. 134

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 134

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot be turned or can only be turned with difficulty to position 2 » Fig. 134, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Starting the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine once the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
› Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 134 *on page 139*.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Turn the key to position 3 to the stop and release immediately the engine has started – do not depress the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Depress clutch to start.**
S **CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission[1]

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Depress the brake to start.**
S **BRAKE**

CAUTION

- If the engine does not start-up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
  - Petrol engine - fuse for the electric fuel pump.
  - Diesel engine - fuse for the control unit for glow plugs or glow plug relay and fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 220, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key to position 1 » Fig. 134 *on page 139*.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Exit System, hereinafter referred to only as system) allows the switching on or switching off of the ignition and starting or stopping of the engine without the active use of the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the ignition and start the vehicle. When travelling the key must be in the vehicle.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The engine's exhaust gases also contain the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide, a poisonous gas – risk of death.
  - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been forgotten, for example, in the front of the vehicle roof D » Fig. 34 *on page 53* - There is danger of loss or damage to the key! It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.
- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine may be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 211, *Jump-starting*.

[1] Applies to vehicles with START STOP system.

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 143.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

Steering lock / unlock

Fig. 135
Starter button

Read and observe and on page 140 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » Fig. 135.
› Open the driver door.

The steering is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

If the system does not unlock the steering at the first time (for example when the front wheels are in contact with an obstacle), then two more unlocking attempts are performed automatically.

If the steering is still not unlocked, then the following message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Move the steering wheel!
MOVE STEERING WHEEL

Slightly move the steering wheel and the system will make up to 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the warning light flashes.

If the steering is still not unlocked, to try to eliminate the possible cause and then repeat the unlocking attempt.

Ignition on/off

Read and observe and on page 140 first.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 135 *on page 141* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual transmission**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Ignition on!
IGNITION SWITCHED ON

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Note
The ignition is switched on when indicated by the illuminating of certain indicator lamps in the instrument cluster.

Starting the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine once the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Press and hold » Fig. 135 *on page 141* [1]the starter button until the engine starts.

CAUTION
- If the engine does not start-up after a second attempt, one of the following fuses may be defective.
  - Petrol engine - fuse for the electric fuel pump.
  - Diesel engine - fuse for the control unit for glow plugs or glow plug relay and fuel pump.
- Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 220, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

[1] On vehicles with the START STOP system, it is sufficient to press the starter button briefly. The motor will then automatically start.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 135 *on page 141* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

The engine can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

Emergency start-up of the engine

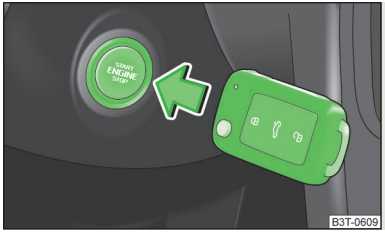


Fig. 136
Emergency start-up of engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.
NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

› Press the starter button directly with the key » Fig. 136.

or

› Press the starter button and then hold the key to the starter button.

Note
During an emergency engine start-up, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 136.

Emergency ignition shutoff system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

The ignition can be turned off in an emergency even when travelling at a speed of more than 2 km / hr.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 135 *on page 141* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After emergency stop of the ignition, the steering is unlocked.

Brakes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!

! WARNING

In the case of damage to the standard fitted front spoiler or if retrofitting another front spoiler, hub caps etc.» page 173, *Services, modifications and technical alterations*, make sure that the air supply to the front brakes is not affected. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – there is a risk of an accident!

! CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 149.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance down a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between services.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 35, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

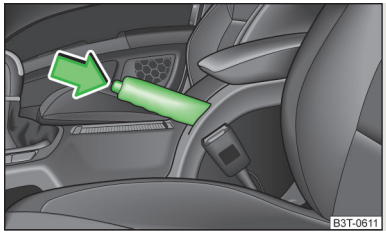


Fig. 137
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Releasing
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 137.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light illuminates when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

! WARNING
Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – there is a risk of an accident.

! CAUTION
After the vehicle has come to a standstill, always tighten the handbrake first and then select the first gear (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to the P-position (vehicles with an automatic gearbox).

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

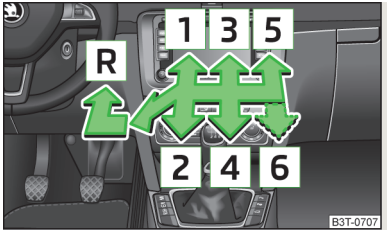


Fig. 138
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedals!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if the forward driving mode is changed when the vehicle is halted and the engine is running – there is a risk of an accident.
- Never shift the selector lever to **R** or **P** modes when driving – there is a risk of an accident.
- The vehicle must be held on the brake pedal in **D**, **S** or **R** modes if the vehicle is halted and the engine is running. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is shifted to **N** while the vehicle is being driven you must lift off the accelerator pedal and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before shifting the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below -10 °C, the engine can only be started in selector lever position **P**.
- Never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal when stopping on a hill – this may lead to transmission damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn when the selector lever is in position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

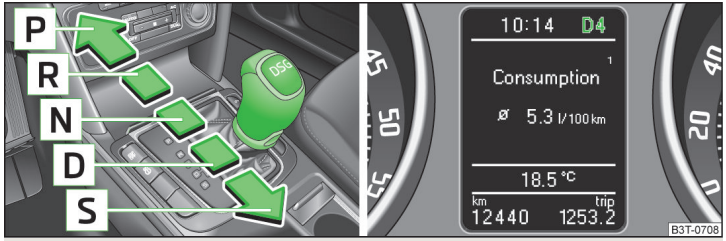


Fig. 139 **Selector lever/display**

Fig. 140
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 139.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 139.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before moving into mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140.

N - Neutral
Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D** , the shift lock button must be pressed in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140.

Releasing selector lever from P or N modes (selector lever lock)
The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 41.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140.

The selector lever is not locked when shifted quickly through **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approximately 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)

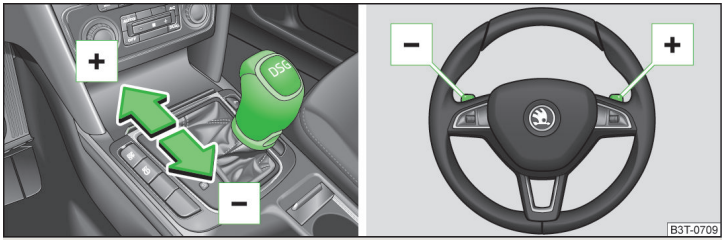


Fig. 141 **Selector lever/multi function steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while halted and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 139 *on page 145* display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from position **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears
› Press the selector lever forwards [+] » Fig. 141.
› Pull the right-hand paddle ⊕ » Fig. 141 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears
› Press the selector lever backwards [-] » Fig. 141.
› Pull the left-hand paddle ⊖ » Fig. 141 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual gear shifting in mode D or S
› Pull one of the ⊖/⊕ paddles » Fig. 141 briefly towards the steering wheel .

Manual gear shifting is deactivated if more than 1 minute passes after either of the ⊖/⊕ paddles was pulled. The temporary switch to manual gear shifting can also be deactivated by pulling the right-hand ⊕ paddle towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over revving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence brake wear » page 143.

Starting off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140 *on page 146*and keep pressing.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 145 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Press the lock button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140 *on page 146*and keep pressing.
› Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the locking button.

Launch control[1)]
The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

› Disable the ASR » page 154, *Brake assist systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 164.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the ASR and START STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve maximum acceleration by your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

1) This function is only valid for some engines.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – there is a risk of an accident.

Malfunction

Read and observe and on page 145 first.

Emergency programme

The transmission switches to the emergency programme if there is a fault in the automatic gearbox system.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following:

- Only certain gears are selected.
- Reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating

The gearbox may, for example, become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » page 33, *Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot.*

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 217.

Note

Visit a specialist workshop if the gearbox has switched to the emergency programme.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1,000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, which means 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- No full throttle.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1,000 up to 1,500 kilometres

Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, which means up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale on the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » page 43, *Gear recommendation*. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » .

In vehicles with manual transmission, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 43, *Gear recommendation*.

CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm and hence engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

New tyres

New tyres must firstly be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:
› Your personal driving style
› Operating conditions
› Technical requirements

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 - 15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be maintained when accelerating, to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

! CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing.

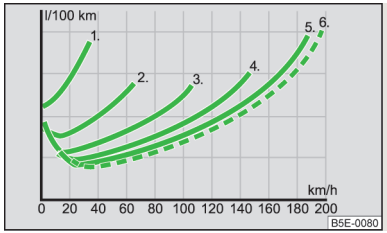


Fig. 142
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox
› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approximately 2,000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 43, *Gear recommendation*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 142.

Automatic gearbox

› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it as far as the kickdown position » page 147.
› An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

Avoiding full throttle

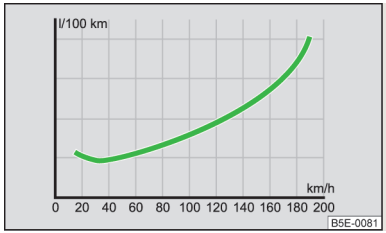


Fig. 143
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The graph » Fig. 143 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, In this case high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

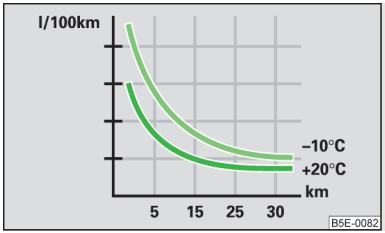


Fig. 144
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Short distances result in above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The graph » Fig. 144 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

Checking tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct » page 198. If the pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore we recommend carrying no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5,000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic low viscosity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Saving electrical energy

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

Read and observe ! on page 149 first.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.

› No asbestos.
› Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
› Solvent-free cavity protection.
› Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
› The use of solvent-free adhesives.
› No CFCs used in the production process.
› Without use of mercury.
› Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars
ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always [1]be returned free of charge.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note
You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.
› When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
› When driving over kerbs.
› When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is required for vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

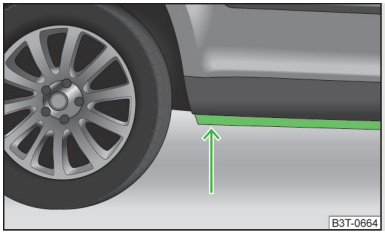


Fig. 145
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Determine the depth of the water before driving through it.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 145.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off. ▶

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a threat of serious damage being incurred by the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmissions can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 184, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Headlights with Xenon lights can be adjusted in the menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 71.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 173, *Services, modifications and technical alterations*.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also not work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light » page 38.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

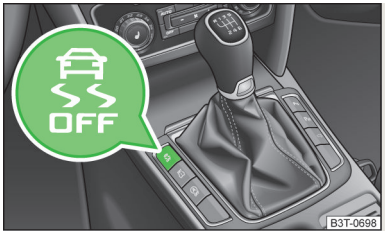


Fig. 146
ESC system: ASR button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

The ESC system helps to maintain control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the road surface conditions, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability .

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) » page 155.
- Traction control (ASR) » page 155.
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) » page 155.
- Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) » page 155.
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » page 155.
- Hill Hold Control (HHC) » page 156.
- Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » page 172.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The button » Fig. 146 can only be used to deactivate the ASR.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Fig. 147
ASR button

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

If the wheels are slipping, the ASR system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The ASR makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The ASR function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 154.

During an intervention of the system, the ASR warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The ASR should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

The ASR can be deactivated via the ASR OFF » Fig. 147symbol button.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Ensure the ASR is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe and on page 154 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

HHC is active on slopes of >5 % when the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

! CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol flashing in the button » Fig. 148 *on page 157*. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Additionally installed accessories such as e.g. bicycle carriers can impair the system function.

i Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- If not all fields around the vehicle are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or in reverse.
- The sound of the park assist can be adjusted via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 47.
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning tone is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.

Function

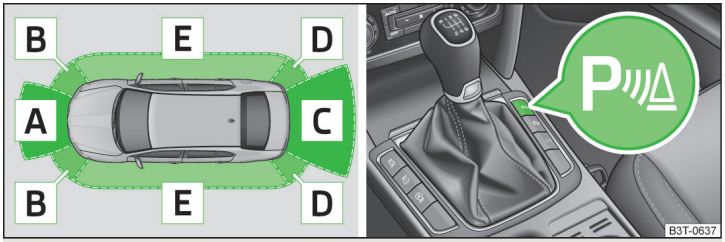


Fig. 148 **Range of sensors / system button**

Read and observe and on page 156 first.

The parking aid (referred to below solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver via audible signals, via the display on the radio or via the factory-installed navigation system when parking and manoeuvring » *Radio user guide, Navigation system user guide.*

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are located on the front/rear bumper.

Image description - approximate range of the sensors

Range » Fig. 148	Range of sensors
A	120 cm
B	60 cm
C	160 cm
D	60 cm
E [a]	60 cm

[a] Applies only for vehicles with 12 sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory fitted towing device.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory fitted towing device, only system areas A and B » Fig. 148 are active when towing a trailer.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe and on page 156 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button » Fig. 148 *on page 157*. The symbol illuminates in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear, either by pressing the symbol button or automatically at a speed exceeding 10 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear sensors**, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or driving out of the parking space, the driver operates the pedals as well as the gear lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 156, *Parking aid* **must also be read and observed.**

WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel spokes – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Do without the use of the system if snow chains or a spare wheel is mounted.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

Note

We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.

Functioning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

Basic system operations

- The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
- The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
- The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
- Automatic rotation of the front wheels during the parking.

The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display) information and system messages are displayed.

When the system is activated, the warning light illuminates P » Fig. 149 *on page 158* - A.

The traction control system (ASR) must always be switched on when parking.

Finding a parking space

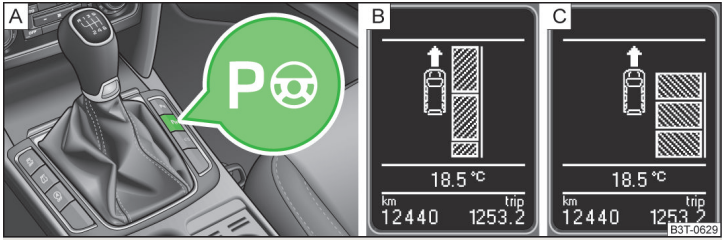


Fig. 149 **System button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

Finding a parallel parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button**once** P » Fig. 149 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 149 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button**twice** P » Fig. 149 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 149 - C.

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button must be pressed again.

Note

If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display , the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking) .

Parking

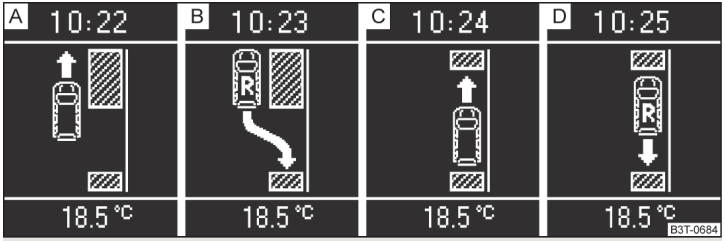


Fig. 150 **Display**

Read and observe and on page 158 first.

Display

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 150 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 150 - B.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the display flashes forward » Fig. 150 - C, then select the 1st gear or move the selector lever into position **D**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 150 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R** .

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!

Automatic brake assist when speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.

› A speed of 7 km / h is exceeded for the second time.
› The time limit of 6 minutes is exceeded.

› The system key is pressed.
› The ASR system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » page 160.

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

Manoeuvring out
› Press the symbol button**once** P » Fig. 149 *on page 158* .
› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

Take over steering and continue driving

Automatic termination
The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.
› The system key is pressed.
› The ASR system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » page 160.

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
If the parking is aborted due to the speed exceeding 7 km / h for the second speed, then the automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system!

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

Park Assist: Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is P must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Driver steering intervention: Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the ASR system is deactivated. Activate the ASR.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because ASR was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. System not available right now.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by an ASR intervention.

PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

Automatic space departure not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Park Assist: Brake interv. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the cruise control system is switched on.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – there is a risk of an accident.
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, select a lower gear or slow the vehicle using the footbrake.
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when first gear or reverse gear is selected (vehicles with manual transmission).
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **N** or **R** (vehicles with automatic transmission).
- The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.

Activating/deactivating

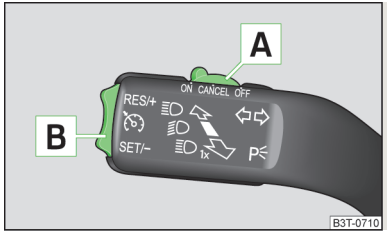


Fig. 151
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

Read and observe and on page 161 first.

Activating

› Move switch A » Fig. 151 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating

› Move switch A » Fig. 151 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 161 first.

› Activate the cruise control system » page 161.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Push the rocker button B into the **SET/-** » Fig. 151 *on page 161* position.

After you have released the rocker button B from the **SET/-** position, the speed you have just stored is kept constant without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 161 first.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B
› Push the rocker button B into the **RES/+** » Fig. 151 *on page 161* position.

If the rocker button is held in the **RES/+** position, the speed will increase continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed using the rocker button B
The stored speed can be **reduced** by pushing the rocker switch B into the **SET/-** » Fig. 151 *on page 161* position.

If the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET/-** position, the speed will decrease continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than approx. 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. Once the speed of the vehicle has increased to more than approx. 25 km/h, the speed must then be stored again by pushing the rocker button B into the **SET/-** position.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator
› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal
The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 162.

Switching off temporarily

Read and observe ! and ! on page 161 first.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily deactivated** by pushing the switch A » Fig. 151 *on page 161* into the spring-mounted **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button B into the **RES/+** position in order to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

START STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions for the system

Fig. 152
MAXI DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If after stopping the car, the message **UNABLE TO START STOP** appears in the segment display or in the MAXI DOT display the check mark » Fig. 152, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.
› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air conditioning capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Note

▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the system.
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
▪ After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Stop the vehicle.
› Shift the gear lever to Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 152 *on page 163*.

Automatic engine start
› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display Ⓐ » Fig. 152 *on page 163*.

Automatic engine start
› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Further information on automatic transmission
The automatic engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position, then the automatic start-up of the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D, S** or **N,** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when turning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:
› The vehicle has begun to roll, e.g. on a slope.
› The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
› The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 153
Button for the START STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

Deactivating/activating
› Press the Ⓐ OFF button » Fig. 153.

When start stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the system KESSY the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

M **Fault: Start stop**
S **ERROR START-STOP**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends taking a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 47.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

In MAXI DOT display the icon appears for a few seconds and the following message.

Fatigue detected. Take a break!

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to only as a system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates and an audible signal sounds.

Information on the procedure for the notification of change of tyre inflation pressure » page 40.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 198.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture.

Save tyre pressure values

Fig. 154
Key for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

Saving the tyre pressure values is undertaken as follows.

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the symbol button » Fig. 154 .

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal and the control indicator provide information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

› Release the symbol button.

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system, if one of the following events occurs.
› Change of tyre inflation pressure.
› Changing one or more wheels.
› Changing position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› Illumination of the warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 198. When storing incorrect pressure values, the system could possibly not issue any warnings, even with a too low tyre pressure.

CAUTION

The tyre pressure values are to be saved every 10,000 km or once annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg/h**.

WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- Do not use the ball head, if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Never release the ball head while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

CAUTION

- Take care with the ball bar - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper.
- When the tow bar is removed always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of hitch » page 180.
- Tow the vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 214.

Description

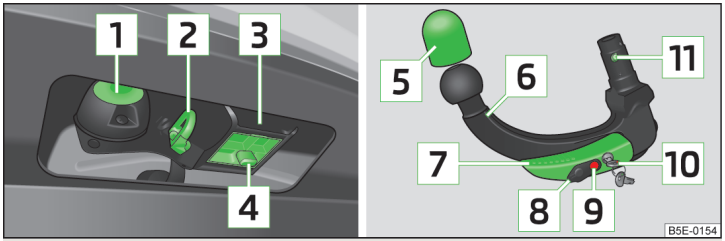


Fig. 155 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 155

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eyelet
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball head
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Release pin
10 Key
11 locking ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

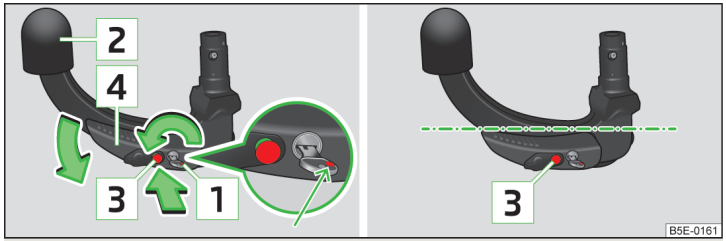


Fig. 156 **Setting the ready position/ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

The coupling ball bar must be set prior to installation in the standby position.

If this is not in the ready position, then this must be set to the standby position as follows.

› Grip the ball head below the protective cap 2.
› Remove the cap from the lock.
› Insert the key into the lock, so that its green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key 1 in direction of the arrow, so that the red marking is facing upwards » Fig. 156.
› Press the release pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow and at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The operating lever remains locked in this position.

! CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Fitting the ball head

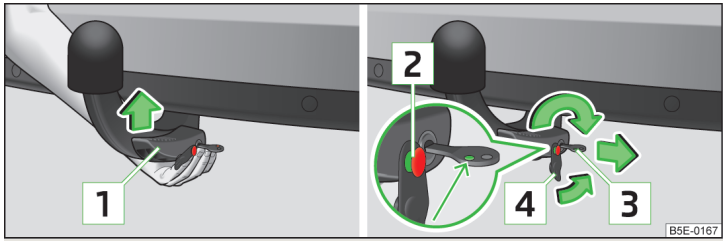


Fig. 157 **Insert the ball head/lock the lock, and put the lock cover on**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Pull cap 4 » Fig. 155 *on page 167* downwards.
› Adjust the ball head to the ready position » page 167.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 157 and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place » !.

The operating lever 1 **automatically** turns upwards and the release pin 2 pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the operating lever 1 does not automatically emerge, or if the release pin 2 does not pop out, remove the ball head from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it will go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the ball head and the mounting recess.

› Turn the key 3 180° to the right so that its green marker points upward.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
› Insert and press the cap 4 onto the lock in the direction of the arrow » !.
› Check the ball head for secure mounting » page 168.

! WARNING

▪ Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head – there is a risk of fingers being injured!
▪ Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

! CAUTION

▪ After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the lock – there is a risk of the lock getting dirty.
▪ Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

Check proper fitting

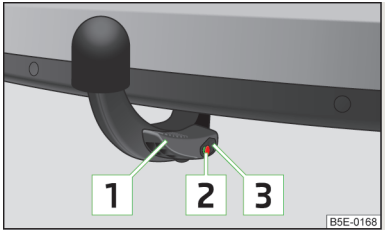


Fig. 158
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Check that the ball head is fitted properly each time before use.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 158

✓ Lever 1 is up as far as it will go » Fig. 158.
✓ The release pin 2 is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed.
✓ Cap 3 is on the lock.
✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

! WARNING

The towing device can only be used when the tow bar is correctly locked – there is the risk of an accident occurring.

Removing the ball head

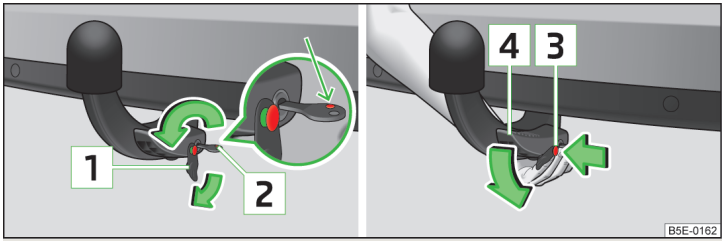


Fig. 159 **Unlock the operating lever of the ball head/removing the ball head**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Remove cover 1 » Fig. 159from the lock in the direction of the arrow.
› Insert the key into the lock, so that its green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn the key 2 180° to the left so that its red marker points upward.
› Grasp the ball head **from underneath**.
› Press the release pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow and at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 155 *on page 167* onto the mounting recess.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- If the lever is held firmly and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- Tuck the ball bar in the ready position, with the golden key up, in the box - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

i Note

- We recommend that you put the protective cap on the ball before removing the ball head.
- Clean any dirt from the ball head before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

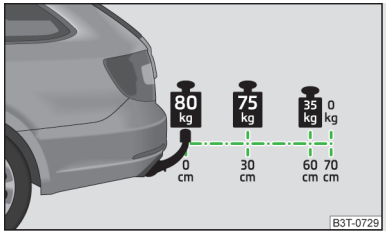


Fig. 160
Representation of the maximum permissible level of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessories including the load depending on the load center of gravity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

An accessory can mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch (e.g. bike carriers).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessories including load are to be checked.

The maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 160.

The total permitted weight of the accessory including load changes with increasing distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing hitch.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessory, including load
0 cm	80 kg
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.
- Never exceed the permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

If your vehicle has already been factory fitted with towing equipment or is fitted with towing equipment from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » page 220.

Attaching and detaching trailers

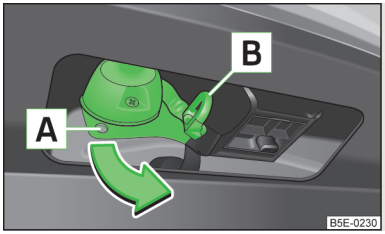


Fig. 161
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Coupling

› Install the tow bar.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 161.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 155 *on page 167* towards the top.
› Place the trailer onto the ball.
› Insert the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories to establish a connection to the electricity.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security lock slot B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer has to **sag** when mounted into the security lock slot for all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like).

Uncoupling

The uncoupling of the trailer is carried out in reverse order.

› Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the security lock slot B » Fig. 161.
› Pull the trailer cable out of the 13-pin socket.
› Remove the trailer from the ball head.
› Place the cover 5 on the ball head » Fig. 155 *on page 167*.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 161.

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. National legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle can be lifted when a trailer is being towed and the headlights can dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlight setting on the headlight range control » page 68, *Operating the lights and the instrument illumination*.

WARNING
- Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installation can cause accidents and serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they are working.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

CAUTION
Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 198.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 228, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1,000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing equipment are merely test data for the towing equipment. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING
- The maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the permissible weight of the trailer must not exceed - this could cause an accident!
- A sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - there is a risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
The speed must be reduced immediately if the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 36, *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING
- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Trailer stabilisation (TSA)

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS warning light.

Function requirements for trailer stabilisation.

✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
✓ The ESC is active. (Warning lights or do **not illuminate** in the instrument cluster).
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.

WARNING
- The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres - there is a risk of accidents.

CAUTION
- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Light trailers that sway are not always detected and therefore stabilised accordingly by the trailer stabilisation.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.

Note
The trailer stabilisation works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

Anti-theft alarm system

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 55.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing equipment.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION
For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Car care

Services, modifications and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out all modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 174before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Works on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner does not assume any liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

He will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle as well as to prevent damage.

This involves, for example, the coolant, battery replacement and the like.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorised for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly, if required by the customer, if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners are equipped with modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the latest guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to ŠKODA AUTO a.s. specifications in respect of design, dimensional accuracy and material and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. can guarantee the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but with wear-and-tear parts for at least 15 years after the end of series production and with all other vehicle parts for at least 10 years.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these components for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. offers a warranty on the reliability, safety and suitability for your particular vehicle of these accessories. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or offer a warranty on other products even though in some instances such products may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised approval authority.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice and professional fitting if requested by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in ▸

any other agreements. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these accessories for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner's website.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, then the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA service partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – there is a risk of an accident!

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:

› Frequency of use.
› Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
› Season.
› Weather conditions.
› Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe and on page 176 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

! WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

! WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

! CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 179 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle exterior, we recommend that cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays.**

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and exterior mirrors

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights to dry.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

Read and observe and on page 177 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 177 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

! WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe ! and ! on page 177 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe ! and ! on page 177 first.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

! CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing device and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 177 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

If dirt is present, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease, if necessary.

Fit the protective cap when stowing away the ball head to protect the luggage compartment against dirt.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Underbody protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 177 first.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

When driving, it cannot be guaranteed that no damage to the **protective layer** will occur.

We recommend having the protective layer underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and maintain the **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scent dispensers or air fresheners to the dash panel – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains,** use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.

▪ Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
▪ The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
▪ Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
▪ Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Synthetic leather, fabrics and Alcantara®

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and special detergent to clean the headlining.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat upholstery from direct sunlight to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

▪ Do not use leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
▪ Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
▪ Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
▪ Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

Electrically heated seats

Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

▪ Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
▪ Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.

- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Seat belts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

! WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 162 *on page 184* - B.

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country in which it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the country concerned. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

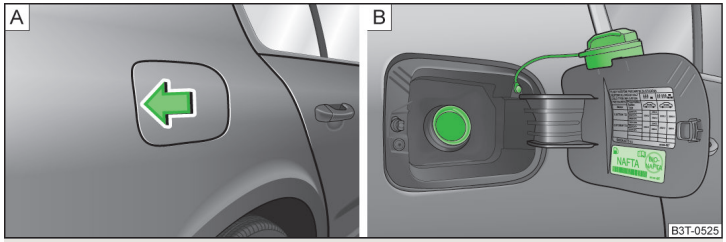


Fig. 162 **Open fuel filler flap / tank cap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) » page 119.

› Unlock the vehicle.
› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 162 - A.
› Unscrew the filler cap by turning it in a counter clockwise direction and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 162 - B.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Insert the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and screw it in a clockwise direction until it clicks into place.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

! CAUTION

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **60 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **10.5 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol with a **maximum of** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Specified fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91 or 92 or 93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption .

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95** RON, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91 or 92 or 93** RON can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 98/95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In an emergency, if unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **98** RON or **95** RON is not available, you may refuel with petrol with an octane rating of **91 or 92 or 93** RON » !.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol complying with EN 228 [1] meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 98.

CAUTION

- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Engine parts could be significantly damaged!

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

CAUTION

In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

CAUTION

Fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) **must not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!**

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[1] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with a **maximum of** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

[2] In Germany complying with standard DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

CAUTION

▪ Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
▪ If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Engine parts could be significantly damaged!
▪ Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

▪ The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
▪ Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents), into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
▪ Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
▪ Firmly apply the handbrake.

WARNING (Continued)

▪ If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
▪ Allow the engine to cool.
▪ Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment
▪ Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
▪ Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
▪ Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
▪ The coolant is harmful to health.
▪ Avoid contact with the coolant.
▪ Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
▪ Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
▪ When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
▪ If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
▪ Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
▪ Consult a doctor immediately if coolant is swallowed.
▪ Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
▪ Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high voltage ignition system – risk to life!
▪ Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.

WARNING (Continued)

- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

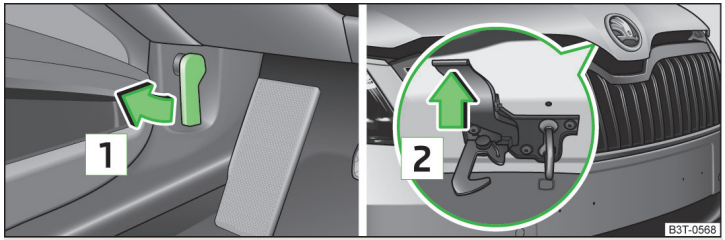


Fig. 163 **Bonnet release lever/release lever**

Read and observe and on page 186 first.

Open flap

› Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 163.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 to unlock the bonnet.
› Grasp the bonnet and lift up until it is held open by the pressurised gas spring.

Close the flap

› Pull the bonnet down far enough to overcome the force of the pressurised gas spring.
› Close the bonnet from a height of approximately 20 cm with a slight swing

WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 163.

Engine compartment overview

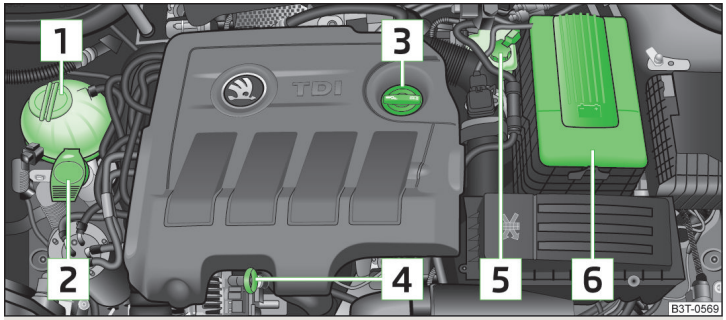


Fig. 164 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 164

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	192
2	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	188
3	Engine oil filler opening	191
4	Engine oil dipstick	190
5	Brake fluid reservoir	193
6	Battery (below a cover)	193

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

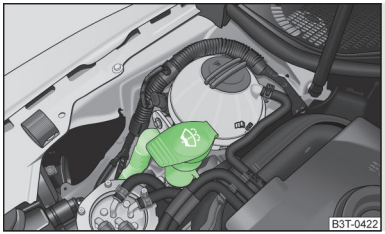


Fig. 165
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 165.

This contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

The washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze in winter even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

[1] In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 190.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 186.
- Stop driving if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not drive on if the oil level is above range A » Fig. 166 *on page 190*. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.6
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
2.0 l/147 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 504 00	5.5

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Capacity
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without DPF**

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6
1.8 l/112, 118 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
	applies to Russia SAE 0W-30 VW 502 00 / 505 00	
2.0 l/147 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
	applies to Russia SAE 0W-30 VW 502 00 / 505 00	
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 502 00	5.5

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Capacity
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without DPF**

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

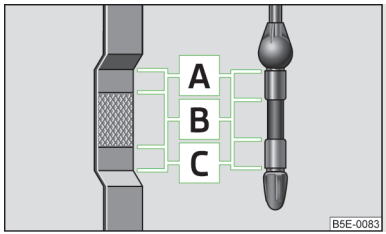


Fig. 166
Principle sketch: Dipstick

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level » Fig. 166.

Checking the oil level
Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

› Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.

› Open the bonnet.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
Oil **can** be refilled. The oil level may lie in range A.

Oil level within range C
The engine **must** be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches range B.

The engine burns some oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend it be checked after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 37, *Engine oil level*. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

The oil level must never be above the A range » Fig. 166 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

› Check the oil level » page 190.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 164 *on page 188*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 189.
› Check the oil level » page 190.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 ℃. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze identified on the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 167 *on page 192*.

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 186.

! CAUTION

- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could ventilate - there is a risk of engine damage, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 167 *on page 192*.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Capacity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Coolant capacity (in litres)[1)]

Petrol engines	Capacity
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	7.7
1.8 l/112 kW TSI 1.8 l/118 kW TSI	8.6

[1)] The coolant capacity is approximately 1 Litre greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Petrol engines	Capacity
2.0 l/147 kW TSI	8.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	9.0

Diesel engines	Capacity
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR	8.4

Checking the coolant level

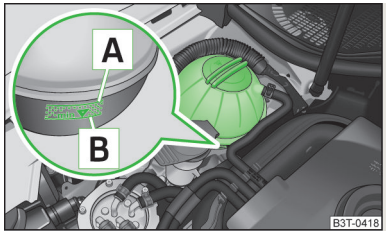


Fig. 167
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

The coolant expansion reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 167.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 167

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level
B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

If the coolant level is above the mark A, **no coolant may** be topped up.

If the coolant level is below the mark B, the coolant **must** be topped up.

Checking the level
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle. » Fig. 167.

Check the coolant level only when the engine is cold.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 167.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning light illuminating in the instrument cluster » page 36, *Coolant*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 191, ! in section *Introduction*.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION
- Only top up with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use only water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 186.
- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has fallen below the MIN marking » Fig. 168 *on page 193* - there is a risk of an accident. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

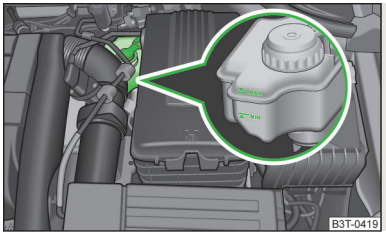


Fig. 168
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 193 first.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 168.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 168.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results in operation due to normal wear-and-tear and the automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light » page 35, *Brake system* illuminating in the instrument cluster.

Changing

Read and observe and on page 193 first.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.

Symbol	Meaning
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the generally applicable rules of safety as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!

WARNING (Continued)

- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, and then the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, and then the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

▪ If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
▪ If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Open cover

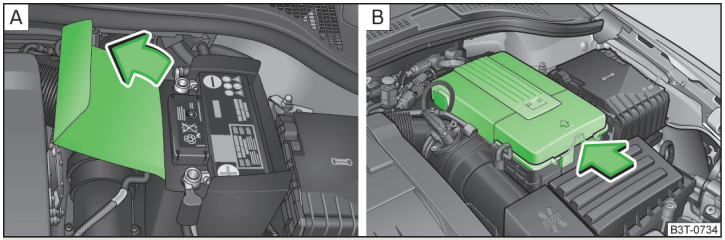


Fig. 169 **Polyester cover of the vehicle battery / plastic cover of the vehicle battery**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment, with some equipment under a polyester cover » Fig. 169or in the left side compartment of the luggage compartment » page 101.

Battery in the engine compartment

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 169 - A or press the catch on the side of the battery cover in the direction » Fig. 169 - B.
› fold the cover up and remove.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Battery in the boot

The battery is located in the left side compartment with the symbol » page 101.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

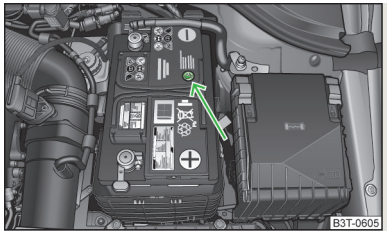


Fig. 170 **Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, » Fig. 170 the colouring of the display can indicate the acidic level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has some of its starting power at low temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging

Read and observe and on page 194 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Disconnect both battery cables ("negative" first, then "positive") only when "rapid charging" the battery.
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
- Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery cables if you are recharging the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the charger manufacturer's instructions**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

Both cables must be disconnected before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 212, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START STOP system*.

Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Replacing

Read and observe and on page 194 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting or reconnecting

Read and observe and on page 194 first.

The following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate faultlessly after the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.

Function	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 64
Panoramic sliding roof (operational faults)	» page 218
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *User manual of the radio* or » *user manual of the navigation system*
Setting the clock	» page 32
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 44

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This may be noticed from the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

! CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

! WARNING

The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.

! WARNING

Instructions for the use of tyres
▪ For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
▪ For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
▪ Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
▪ Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.
▪ An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
▪ Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

! WARNING

Information regarding tyre damage or wear
▪ Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
▪ Never drive with damaged tyres – there is the risk of an accident occurring.

WARNING (Continued)

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- In the event of very fast tyre inflation pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 200, *Spare and temporary spare wheel*.
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- If, in the case of puncture occurring, the spare tyre with a non-bound direction or an opposite direction of rotation must be mounted, then drive carefully. The best properties of the tyre are no longer present in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

- Old and unserviceable tyres are classified in a special environmentally hazardous category. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.
- Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

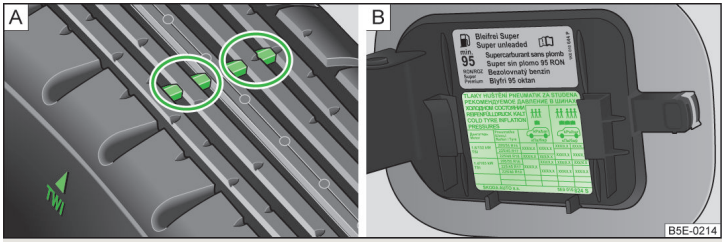


Fig. 171 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures**

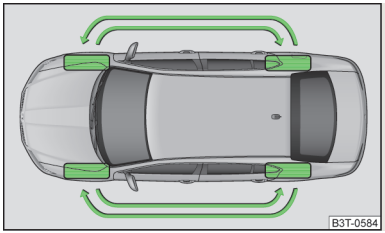


Fig. 172
Replacing wheels

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 171 – B.

The tyre pressure for the spare wheel should correspond to the highest pressure specified for your vehicle.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 166.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Wheel balance
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels likewise rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. With a distinctive tyre wear, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

Exchanging the wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to schedule » Fig. 172. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After a wheel has been replaced, the tyre pressure has to be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 166.

Tyre storage
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres contains has a 1.6 mm high wear indicator » Fig. 171 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts
Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Note
In some countries, the vehicles have a sticker with tyre inflation pressure values without pictograms.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Spare and temporary spare wheel

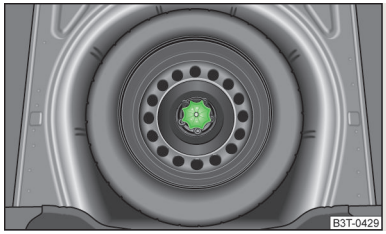


Fig. 173
Fixing the spare or temporary spare wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 173.

Taking the wheel out
› Open the boot lid.
› Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 100.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the nut » Fig. 173 anti-clockwise.
› Take out the wheel.

Stowing the wheel
› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Screw on the nut » Fig. 173 clockwise until the wheel is safely secured.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Close the boot lid.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Temporary spare wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » Fig. 171 *on page 198*.
› The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, since it is not intended for permanent use.

! WARNING
- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sticker on the temporary spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel cover.

Pulling off
› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 205 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting
› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

- Only use the manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – there is a risk of damaging the trim.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area.
- If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

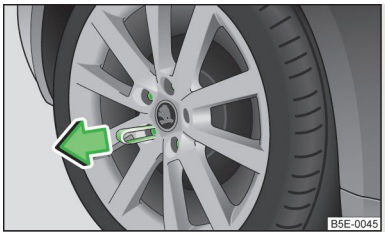


Fig. 174
Remove the cap

Read and observe and on page 197 first.

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the covering caps.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers » page 205 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174.

Fitting

› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Approved tyre variants are first to be selected for the model variant (e.g. Superb GreenLine), and then selected according to the engine size of your vehicle.

If the model variant of your vehicle cannot be found in the discrete module, then the approved tyre variants are to be selected according to the engine size of your vehicle in module » page 202, *Superb*.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

The information listed in the table corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

The approved tyre / rim combinations for your car are given on the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Explanation of the tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **225/50R 17 91 T**means:

225	Tyre width in mm
50	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
17	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example, **DOT ... 11 14...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

The marking **M+S**means that the associated tyre is suitable for winter use.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed icon	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	200	210	240	270	300

CAUTION
The information about load index and speed symbol can be found in the vehicle sales and technical documentation.

Superb

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed icon
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	93	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	93	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
2.0 l/147 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	V[a)]
	205/55 R16	91	W
	205/50 R17	93	W
	225/45 R17	91	W
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.8 l/112 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	93	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.8 l/118 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	93	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	205/50 R17	93	W
	225/45 R17	91	W
	225/40 R18	92	Y
2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	93	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	93	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y

a) Applies only to vehicles with a rough road package.

Superb GreenLine

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed icon
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	H

Superb N1

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed icon
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	205/50 R17	93	W
	225/45 R17	94	W
	225/40 R18	92	Y

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions.

To get best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth must be 4 mm.

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the **Winter tyres** menu item » page 47.

For the sake of the environment

Re-fit the summer tyres at an appropriate time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **9 mm**.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth D	Tyre size
7J x 16[a)]	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

[a)] Not valid for vehicles with 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 200.

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains are to be removed when driving on snow-free paths. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first-aid kit and warning triangle

Fig. 175 **Stowage compartment for the first-aid kit: Superb / Superb Combi**

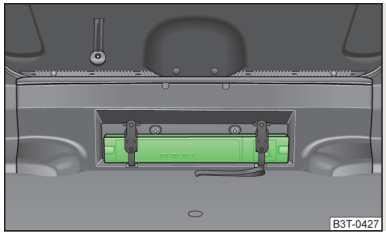


Fig. 176
Placing of the warning triangle

First-aid box
The compartment for stowing the first-aid box is located in the right of the boot » Fig. 175.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 176.

WARNING
The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

fire extinguisher

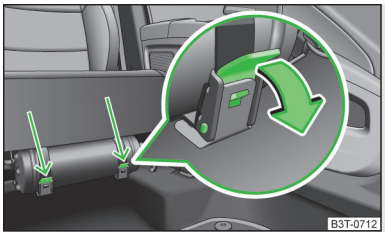


Fig. 177
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching
› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 177.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› For mounting, fit the fire extinguisher back into the holder and secure it with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. National legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

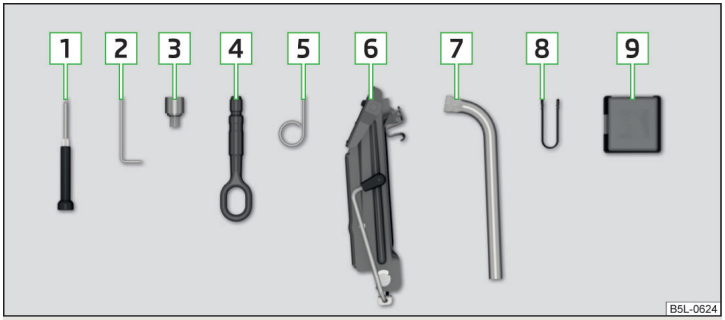


Fig. 178 **Vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the compartment for the spare wheel underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment, not all the components listed in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

1 Screwdriver
2 Spanner for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Depending upon vehicle equipment: Jack with sign / puncture repair kit
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
9 Replacement bulb set

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

▪ If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
▪ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
▪ The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory fitted ones » page 201, *Explanation of the tyre labelling*.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts
▪ The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
▪ The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
▪ If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
▪ In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **1st gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission in the **P-position**.
› Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
› Uncouple a trailer.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 205and the **spare wheel** » page 200from the boot.

Changing a wheel

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts alternately (cross-wise) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the indication is correct » page 197.

WARNING

If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

Follow-up work

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 200.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 166.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

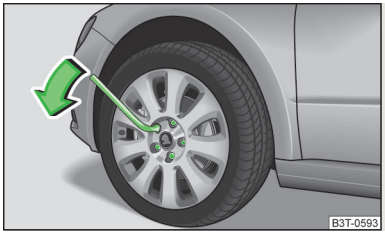


Fig. 179
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

Before removing the wheel bolts, the caps for the wheel bolts must be pulled off.

Releasing

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop[1].
› Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 179.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop[1].
› Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 179 until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, the covering caps must be replaced.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

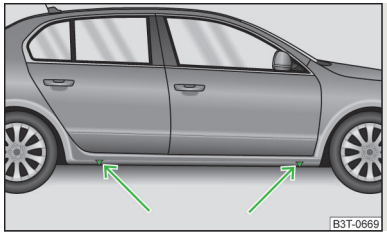


Fig. 180
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

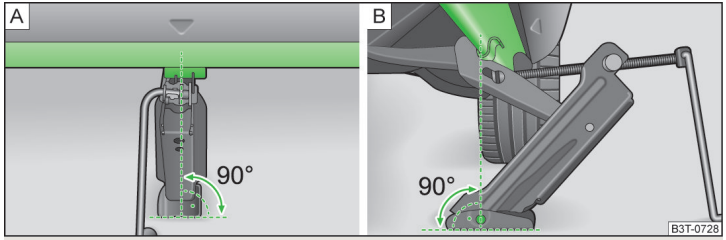


Fig. 181 **Attach lifting jack**

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

In order to raise the vehicle, the jack from the tool kit is to be used.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 208.

The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower sill on the underside of your vehicle. The positions of these are embossed by means of markings on the side surface of the lower sill » Fig. 181.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 181 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 181 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the web of the lower fork leg, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle occurring.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

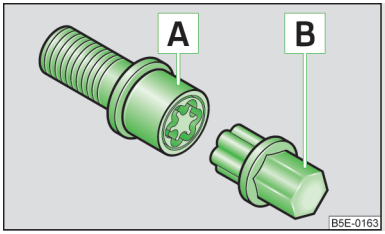


Fig. 182
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

Read and observe ! on page 206 first.

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B » Fig. 182.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B » Fig. 182 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 207.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

To be equipped for a possible wheel change, the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

Note

- Note the code number which is embossed both on the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Puncture set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit **is never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel need not be removed during the repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
- There is damage to the rim.
- The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.

WARNING
- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

WARNING (Continued)
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

Components of the puncture repair kits

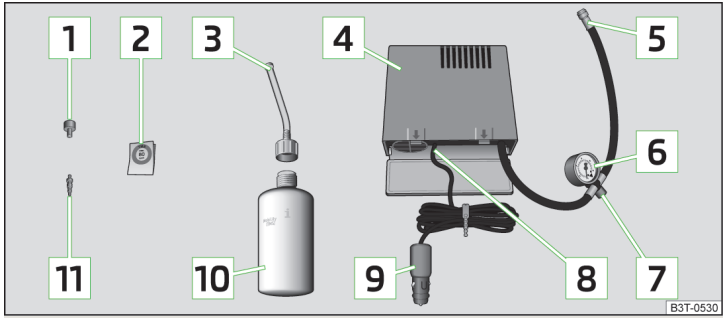


Fig. 183 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

Components of the set » Fig. 183
1. Valve remover
2. Sticker with "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph" speed designation
3. Inflation hose with plug
4. Air compressor
5. Tyre inflation hose

6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. This contains a sealing means and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **1st gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission in the **P-position**.
› Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 209.
› Uncouple a trailer.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the appropriate sticker 2 » Fig. 183 *on page 209* onto the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

Sealing

› Shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 183 *on page 209* vigorously several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 183 *on page 209* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 91, *Cigarette lighter*.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is reached, the journey may be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not continue to drive! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of burning.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with tyre repaired

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› STOP **Do not continue to drive!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to work in the engine compartment » page 186.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump-start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

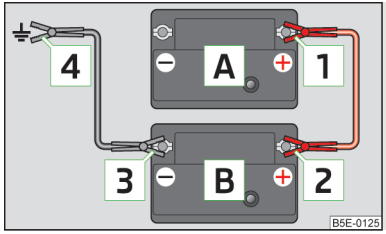


Fig. 184
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Read and observe ! on page 211 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 184.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.

› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Remove the jumper cables exactly in the **reverse** sequence as for clamping.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Obey the instructions of the jump-start cable manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START STOP system

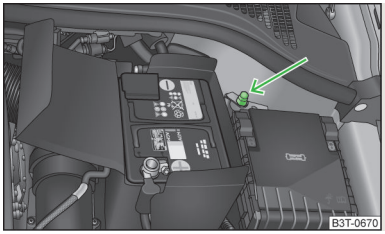


Fig. 185
Engine earth: START STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 211 first.

The jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point on vehicles with the START STOP system » Fig. 185.

Jump-starting vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot

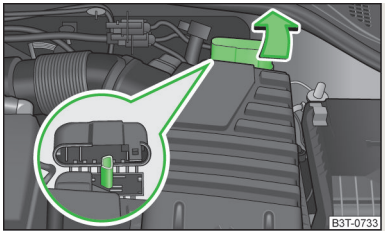


Fig. 186
Detail of the engine compartment: Jump-starting point

Read and observe ! on page 211 first.

On vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot, the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power can only be connected to the jump-starting point in the engine compartment of the vehicle being started by means of a jump-start cable » Fig. 186.

› Open the protective cap of the jump-starting point in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 186.
› Connect the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power with the jump-starting point.
› Attach the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power to a solid metal part firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.
› Start the engine.

› After starting the engine, close the protective cap of the jump-starting point.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

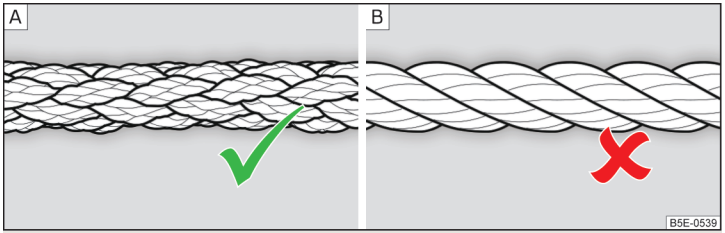


Fig. 187 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For towing a braided tow rope is to be used » Fig. 187- A.

The following guidelines must be observed when towing.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might possibly occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

! WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- For towing no spiral tow rope is to be used » Fig. 187- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - there is a risk of accidents.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - there is a risk of accidents.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 211, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, your vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

▪ There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
▪ Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 214, *Front towing eye* or » page 214, *Rear towing eye* to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 166.

Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye

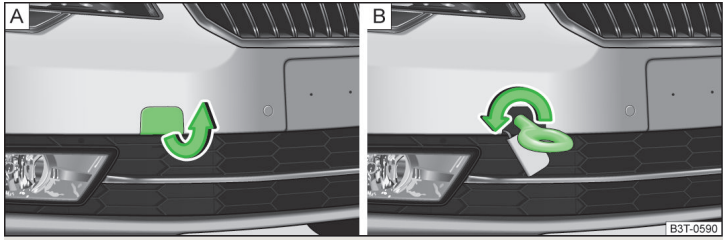


Fig. 188 **Removing the cap / installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

› Remove the cap from the front bumper » Fig. 188 - A.
› Screw-in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 188 - B and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place.

The cap must engage firmly.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

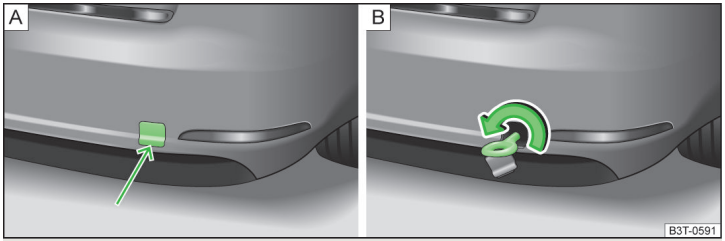


Fig. 189 **Removing the cap / installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

› Press onto the bottom part of the cap in the rear bumper » Fig. 189 - A and remove it.
› Screw-in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 189 - B and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place.

The cap must engage firmly.

On vehicles with a factory fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » page 214, *Vehicles with a tow hitch*.

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

On vehicles with a factory fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 166, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Radio remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

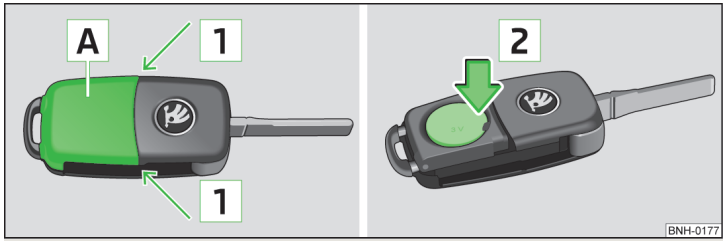


Fig. 190 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 215 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 190 with your thumb or by using a screwdriver release in the region of arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 215.

Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 215 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when the remote control is pressed, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Replace the battery in the remote control of the auxiliary heater (parking heater)

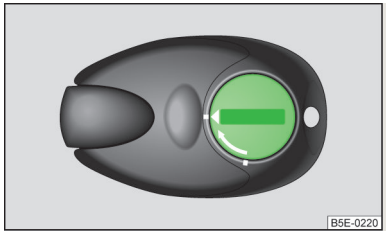


Fig. 191
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 215 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 191.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

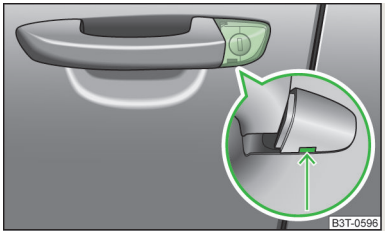


Fig. 192
Handle on the driver's door: covered key cylinder

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

› Pull on the door handle and hold it pulled.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the underside of the cover in the region of the arrow » Fig. 192.
› Fold the cover upwards.
› Release the door handle.
› Insert the remote control key into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **LHD** insert the remote control key **with the buttons facing up** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD** insert the remote control key **directed with buttons down** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.

Pull on the door handle and install the cover to the original location.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

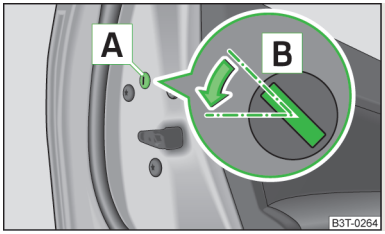


Fig. 193
Left rear door: Emergency locking

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder. It is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the cover A » Fig. 193.
› Insert the key into the slot B and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
› Replace the cover.

Unlocking the boot lid

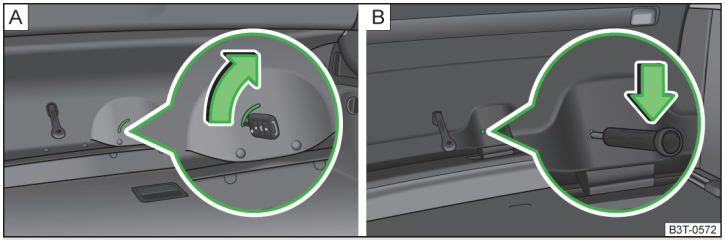


Fig. 194 **Emergency unlocking: Superb / Superb Combi**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually in an emergency.

Unlocking (Superb)
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 194 - A.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Unlocking (Superb Combi)
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim as far as the stop » Fig. 194 - B.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

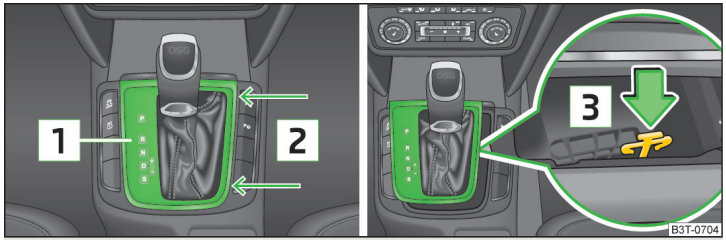


Fig. 195 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Grasp the cover 1 in the area of arrow 2 » Fig. 195 and carefully pull upwards.
› Also unlock the cover on the other side.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 3.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to **N**.

The selector lever will be locked once more if it is moved again to **P**.

Emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation

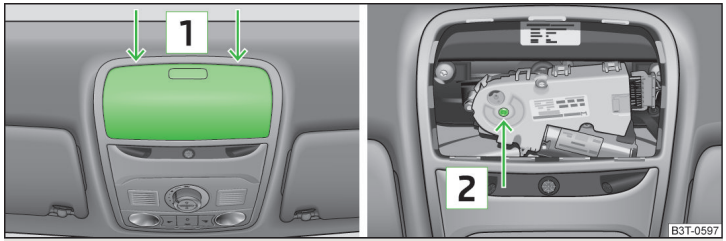


Fig. 196 **Point for positioning screwdriver/opening for positioning the key**

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed or opened manually if a fault occurs. The emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof is located underneath the glasses storage box 1 » page 93, *Glasses storage box*.

› Open the glasses storage box.
› Carefully insert an approximately 5 mm wide screwdriver into the slot in the positions shown by the arrows 1 » Fig. 196.
› Carefully fold the glasses storage box downwards by gently pressing down and turning the screwdriver.
› Insert an Allen key, SW 4, up to the stop into the opening 2 and close or open the sliding/tilting roof.
› Reinstall the glasses storage box by first inserting the plastic plugs and then pushing the entire part upwards.

Have the fault on the sliding tilting roof rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

Note

▪ It is necessary after each emergency operation to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position.[1] This is why the rotary switch must be set to position A » Fig. 46 *on page 64* and pressed forwards for about 10 seconds.
▪ After each emergency operation, it is necessary to activate the roof[2] » page 218.

[1] Applies to emergency operation of the Superb sliding/tilting roof.
[2] Applies to emergency operation of the Superb Combi sliding/tilting roof.

Activation after unclamping and reclamping the battery

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (referred to form now on as just the sliding/tiling roof) and the sun screen must be activated after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery.

To activate the sliding/tilting roof, press the notch on the control dial downwards and forwards for approx. 10 seconds.

To activate the sun screen, press and hold the switch G » Fig. 48 *on page 66*for approx. 10 seconds.

If the sliding/tilting roof or sun screen is not fully closed or pushed shut when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery, they must first be closed or pushed shut » page 66, *Opening/closing the sun screen* » page 66, *Operation*. Only then is it possible to perform the activation.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

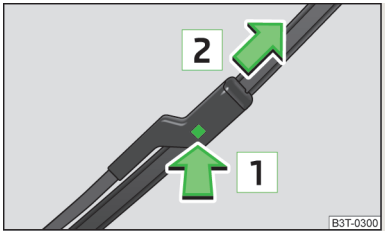


Fig. 197
Windscreen wiper blade

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
› Close the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position 4 and hold it in position for around 2 seconds » Fig. 63 *on page 78*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1 » Fig. 197.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting the wiper blade
› Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » Fig. 63 *on page 78*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

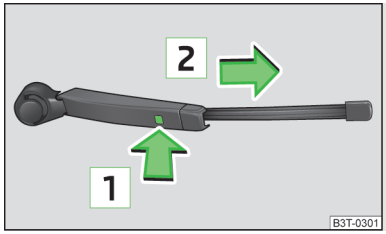


Fig. 198
Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1 » Fig. 198.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting the wiper blade
› Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 220, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 222, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 186.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses or replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – there is a risk of fire. This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse burns through again, then a specialist should be consulted immediately.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be multiple power consuming devices for one fuse.
- A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dash panel

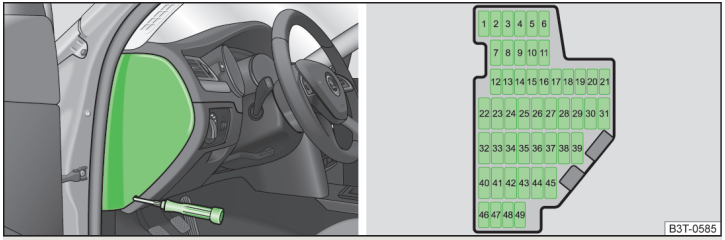


Fig. 199 **Cover of the fuse box in the control panel / fuses**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 220 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the cover.» Fig. 199
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clamp on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Reinsert the cover of the fuse box .

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Consumer
1	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, fuel pump relay, fuel pump control unit
2	ABS control unit, ESC switch for tyre pressure warning, brake sensor, for START STOP coil of the starter relay only
3	Switch and airbag control unit
4	WIV, tail lights, dimming mirrors, pressure sensor, telephone preinstallation
5	Control unit for headlight beam adjustment and headlight swivel, control unit for parking aid, control unit for park assist
6	Instrument cluster, control unit for electromechanical power steering, selector lever lock, power supply for data bus
7	Heated opening of the crankcase ventilation, air flow meter
8	Control unit for trailer detection
9	Relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
10	Adaptive left main headlight
11	Adaptive right main headlight
12	Not assigned
13	Diagnostic socket, light switch, rain sensor, clock
14	Central locking system and bonnet lid
15	Central control unit - interior lights
16	The air conditioning system
17	Not assigned
18	Telephone
19	Instrument cluster, operating lever under the steering wheel, relay coil for heated windscreen
20	KESSY
21	KESSY ELV
22	Air blower for Climatronic
23	Front power window, central locking of the front doors
24	Selector lever lock
25	Rear window heater, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot

No.	Consumer
27	Fuel pump relay, control unit for fuel pump, injection valves
28	Electric boot lid
29	Haldex
30	Climate controlled front seats
31	DVD preinstallation
32	Front power window, central locking system of the rear doors
33	Electric sliding/tilting roof
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	front and rear lighter
36	Headlight cleaning system
37	Heated front seats
38	Heated rear seats
39	Rear window wiper
40	Fan air conditioning system, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
41	Not assigned
42	Light switch
43	Control unit for trailer detection
44	Control unit for trailer detection
45	Control unit for trailer detection
46	Switch for seat heating
47	Telephone preinstallation
48	Preparation for the aftermarket radio
49	Only for START STOP: Central control unit, DC-DC converter, the engine control unit

Fuses in the engine compartment

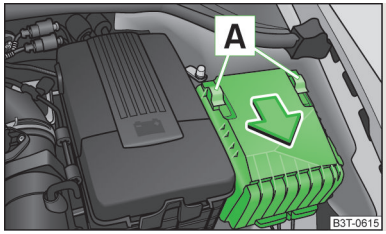


Fig. 200
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 220 first.

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 195.

Replacing fuses

› Move the safety catch of the cover of the fuse box A » Fig. 200in the direction of the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

› Remove the cover.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
› Turn the securing bracket A in opposite direction of the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

The cover is locked into position.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

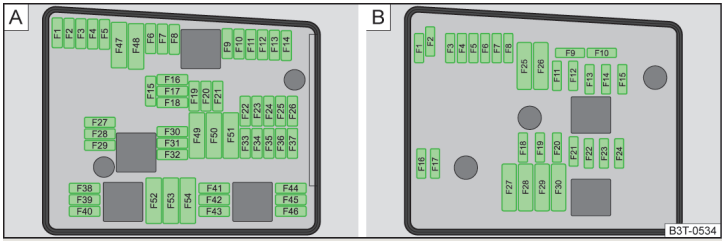


Fig. 201 **Fuses: Type A / Type B**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 220 first.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version A

No.	Consumer
1	Front right main headlight, right tail light
2	Valves for ABS
3-4	Not assigned
5	Horn
6-12	Not assigned
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Coolant pump
16	Not assigned
17	Instrument cluster, windscreen wiper lever, and turn signal lever
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Radio
20 - 22	Not assigned
23	Engine control unit
24	Data bus control unit
25 - 26	Not assigned
27	Fuel dosage valve
28	Engine control unit

No.	Consumer
29	Main relay
30	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
31	Windscreen wipers
32 - 37	Not assigned
38	Radiator fan, valves
39	Clutch/brake pad sensor
40	Lambda probe
41	AKF valve
42	Lambda probe
43	Ignition
44 - 46	Not assigned
47	Front left main headlight, left tail light
48	Pump for ABS
49	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)
50 - 51	Not assigned
52	Power supply relay - terminal X[a)]
53	Power to the internal fuse carrier
54	Not assigned

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version B

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
3	Measuring circuit
4	Valves for ABS
5	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply relay - terminal X[a)]
8	Radio
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control unit, Main relay
11	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
12	Data bus control unit
13	Engine control unit
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe (petrol engine), glow plug system relay and fuel pump (diesel engine)
16	Front right main headlight, right tail light
17	Horn
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Valve for metering fuel, coolant pump, high-pressure pump
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch
23	Coil of the coolant pump relay valves, high-pressure pump
24	Radiator fan
25	Pump for ABS
26	Front left main headlight, left tail light
27	Control unit for glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier
30	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Replacing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 186.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Headlights

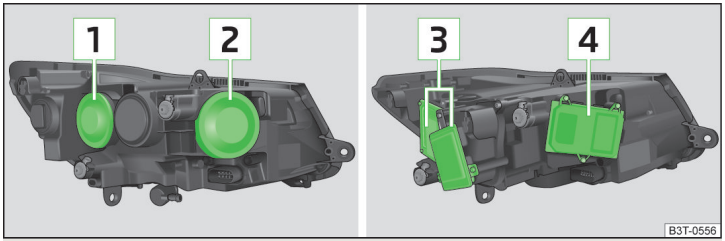


Fig. 202 **Bulb arrangement: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

Headlight with halogen bulb

1 Low beam
2 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

3 Xenon gas discharge bulbs
4 Main beam

Replacing the low beam bulb

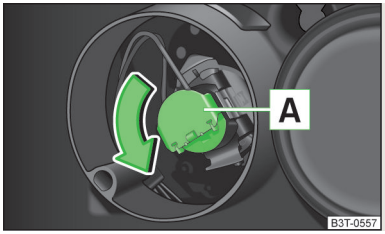


Fig. 203
Halogen headlight: Changing the bulb for the low beam

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

› Remove the protective cap 1 » Fig. 202 *on page 224*.

› Turn the plug with the bulb A » Fig. 203as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow.
› Change the bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in an anti-clockwise direction as far as the stop.
› Fit the protective cover 1.

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

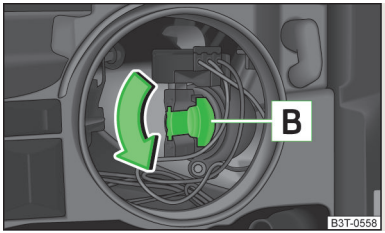


Fig. 204
Halogen headlight: Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

› Remove the protective cap 2 » Fig. 202 *on page 224*.
› Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 204in the direction of the arrow as far as the stop.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
› Fit the protective cover 2.

Replacing bulb for main beam

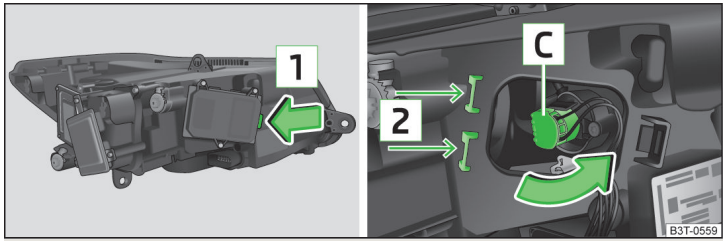


Fig. 205 **Headlights with Xenon light: Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

› Unlock the protective cap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 205 and remove.
› Turn the plug with bulb C anti-clockwise to the stop and remove it.
› Change the bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in an anti-clockwise direction as far as the stop.
› Insert the protective cap in holder 2 and carefully push in.

The protective cover must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

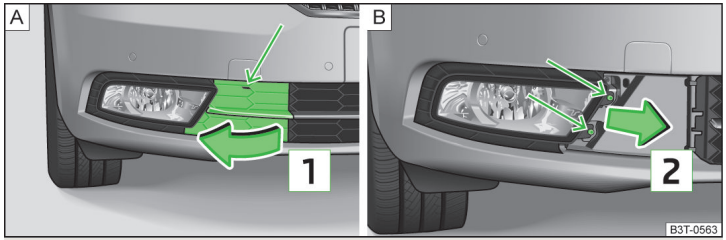


Fig. 206 **Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light**

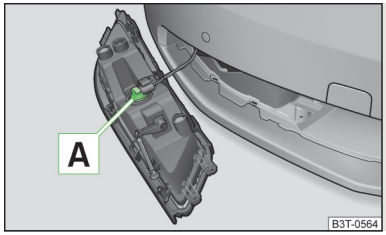


Fig. 207
Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

Removing the protective grille

› Undo the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 206 - A using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 205, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 1.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 206 - B.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Turn bulb holder A » Fig. 207 in an **anti**-clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn **in** a clockwise direction as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.
› Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 206 - B and screw tight.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

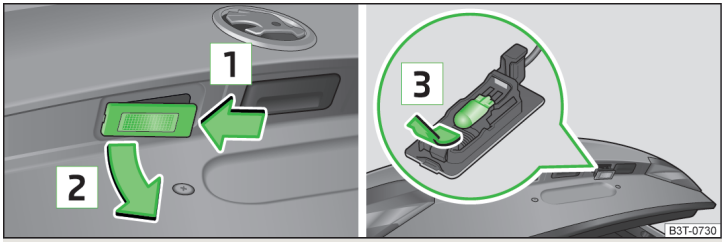


Fig. 208 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 208.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear light (Superb Combi)

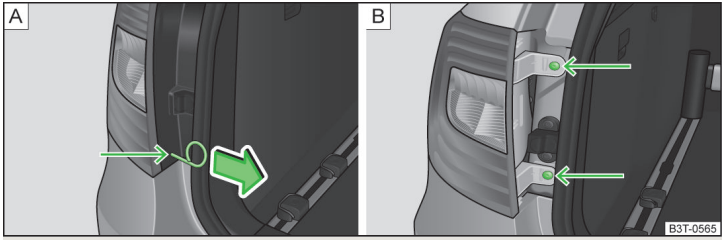


Fig. 209 **Removing: Cover/light**

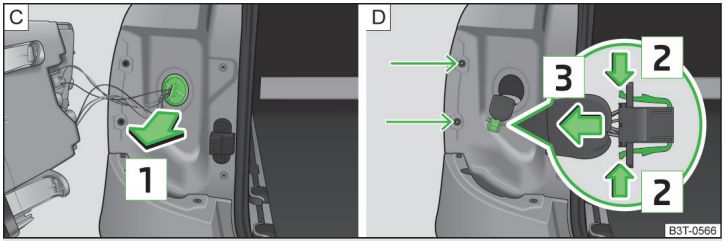


Fig. 210 **Seal expand / lighting connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 205, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 209 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 209 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 209 - B.
› Grasp the rear light and carefully remove away from the direction of travel.
› Remove the rubber seal in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 210 - C.
› Pull off the cable bundle with the plug cap » Fig. 210 - D.
› Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 210 - D.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 3.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Install the rubber seal in the body in the opposite direction to arrow 1 install » Fig. 210 - C.
› Insert the tail lamp with the holes 1 » Fig. 211 *on page 227* into the bolts on the body » Fig. 210 - D.
› Carefully press the tail light into the bolts on the bodywork.

Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
› Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Superb Combi)

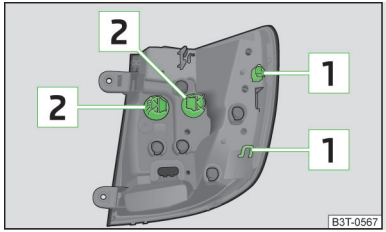


Fig. 211
Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe ! and ! on page 224 first.

› Turn the bulb holder 2 » Fig. 211 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

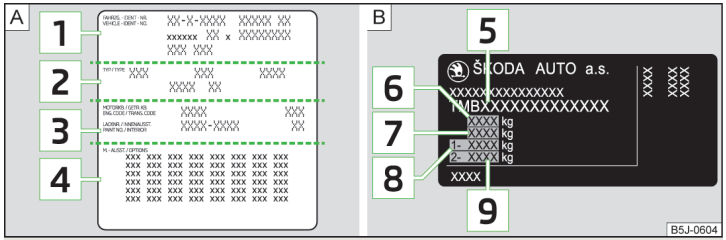


Fig. 212 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 212 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 212 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
6 Maximum permissible gross weight[1)]
7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
8 Maximum permissible front axle load
9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right-hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left-hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

[1)] For vehicles with a factory fitted towing device and sports suspension, the value is reduced by 25 kg.

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 231, *Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type*.

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 80 kg).

Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

	Superb	Superb GreenLine	Superb Combi	Superb Combi GreenLine
Length	4833	4833	4833	4833
Width	1817	1817	1817	1817
Width including exterior mirror	2009	2009	2009	2009
Height	1462/1482 [a]/ 1447[b]	1464/1449[b]	1511/1529 [a]/ 1497[b]	1511/1496[b]
Clearance	139/159[a]/124[b]/141[c]	140/125[b]	141/159[a]/127[b]/140[c]	141/126[b]
Wheel base	2761	2761	2761	2761
Track gauge front/rear	1545/1518 (1537/1510)[c]	1545/1518	1545/1517 (1537/1510)[c]	1545/1517

[a] Applies to vehicles with a rough road package.
[b] Applies to vehicles with a sport chassis.
[c] Applies to vehicles with a 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.4 l/92 kW TSI Motor

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
92/5000	200/1500 - 4000	4/1390

Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb Combi MG6
Top speed (km/h)	204	203
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	10.5	10.6
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1467 - 1615	1489 - 1647
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 [a]/ 1500[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.8 l/112 kW TSI Motor

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
112/4300 - 6200	250/1500 - 4200	4/1798

Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb MG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7	Superb Combi MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	219	218	215	217	216	213
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	8.8	8.7	8.8	8.9	8.8	8.9
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1496 - 1654	1508 - 1666	1587 - 1745	1518 - 1676	1530 - 1688	1609 - 1767
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 [a]/ 1700[b]		1600 [a]/ 1800[b]	1500 [a]/ 1700[b]		1600 [a]/ 1800[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.8 l/118 kW TSI Motor

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)		
118/4500 - 6200	250/1500 - 4500			4/1798		
Performance and Weights	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG7**	**Superb MG6 4x4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG7**	**Superb Combi MG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	222	222	219	221	221	218
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.4	8.4	8.3	8.5	8.5
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1496 - 1654	1508 - 1666	1587 - 1745	1518 - 1676	1530 - 1688	1609 - 1767
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 [a]/ 1700[b]		1600 [a]/ 1800[b]	1500 [a]/ 1700[b]		1600 [a]/ 1800[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 l/147 kW TSI Motor

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
147/5100 - 6000	280/1700 - 5000	4/1984
Performance and Weights	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**
Top speed (km/h)	240	238
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	7.7	7.8
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1540 - 1698	1562 - 1720
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 [a]/ 1800[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

3.6 ltr/191 kW FSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
191/6000	350/2500 - 5000	6/3597

Performance and Weights	Superb DSG6 4 x 4	Superb Combi DSG6 4 x 4
Top speed (km/h)	250	250
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	6.4	6.5
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1704 - 1860	1726 - 1882
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2000	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500 - 2500	4/1598

Performance and Weights	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	194/197[a)]	193	192/195[a)]	192
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	12.1/12.2[a)]	12.2	12.2/12.3[a)]	12.3
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1512 - 1670 (1519 - 1615)[a)]	1519 - 1677	1534 - 1692 (1541 - 1699)[a)]	1541 - 1699
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 [b)]/ 1700[c)]	1200 [b)]/ 1400[c)]	1500 [b)]/ 1700[c)]	1200 [b)]/ 1400[c)]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750			

a) GreenLine
b) Slopes up to 12 %
c) Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)		
103/4200	320/1750 - 2500			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb MG6 4x4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**	**Superb Combi MG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	212	212	210	211	210	208
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	10.0	10.1	10.3	10.1	10.2	10.4
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1532 - 1690	1554 - 1712	1609 - 1767	1554 - 1712	1576 - 1734	1631 - 1789
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)		
125/4200	350/1750 - 2500			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb DSG6 4 x 4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6 4 x 4**
Top speed (km/h)	228	222	219	226	221	218
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7	8.7	8.8
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1540 - 1698	1557 - 1715	1634 - 1792	1562 - 1720	1579 - 1735	1656 - 1814
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)

Engine	Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)		
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG6		
	2032		
1.8 l/118 kW TSI	MG6	DSG7	MG6 4 x 4
	2061	2073	2152
2.0 l/147 kW TSI	DSG6		
	2105		
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	DSG6 4 x 4		
	2267		
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG7	
	2077/2084[a)]	2084	
2.0 l/103 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	MG6 4 x 4
	2097	2119	2174
2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	DSG6 4 x 4
	2105	2122	2199

a) GreenLine

Index

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Superb anglicky 11.2014
S74.5610.19.20
3T0012720AH

3T0012720AH